

SIMPLY CLEVER



# Škoda Octavia Tour OWNER'S MANUAL

## Introduction

**You have opted for a Škoda - our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.**

Your new Škoda offers you a vehicle featuring the most modern engineering and a wide range of equipment which you will undoubtedly wish to use to the full during your daily motoring. That is why, we recommend that you read this Owner's Manual attentively to enable you to become familiar with your car and all that it offers as quickly as possible.

Please do not hesitate to contact your specialist garage or importer should you have any further questions or any problems regarding your vehicle which may arise. He will be ready at any time to receive your questions, suggestions and criticisms.

National legal provisions, which deviate from the information contained in these operating instructions, take precedence over the information contained in the operating instructions.

We wish you much pleasure with your Škoda and pleasant motoring at all times.

Your **Škoda** Auto



### On-board literature

The on-board literature for your vehicle consists of this “**Owner's Manual**” as well as a “**Service schedule**” and a “**Help on the road**”. There can also be a variety of other additional operating manuals and instructions on-board (e.g. an operating manual for the radio) depending on the vehicle model and equipment.

If one of the publications listed above is missing, please contact an authorised Škoda dealer immediately, where one will be glad to assist you in such matters.

**One should note that the details given in the vehicle's papers always take precedence over those in the Owner's Manual.**

### Owner's Manual

This Owner's Manual describes the **current scope of equipment**. Certain items of equipment listed are only installed later on and only envisaged for particular markets. The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

In addition to information regarding all the controls and equipment, the Owner's Manual also contains important information regarding care and operation for your safety and also to retain the value of your vehicle. To provide you with valuable tips and aids. You will learn how you can operate your vehicle **safely, economically** and in an **environmentally** conscious way.

**For safety reasons, please also pay attention to the information on accessories, modifications and replacement of parts** ⇒ page 157.

The other chapters of the Owner's Manual are also important, however, for proper treatment of your car - in addition to regular care and maintenance - helps to retain its value and in many cases is also one of the conditions for possible warranty claims.

### The Service schedule

contains:

- Vehicle data,
- Service intervals,
- Overview of the service work,
- Service proof,
- Confirmation of mobility warranty (only valid in certain countries),
- important information on the warranty.

The confirmations of the carried out service work are one of the conditions for possible warranty claims.

Please always present the Service schedule when you take your car to an authorised Škoda Service Partner.

If the Service schedule is missing or worn, please contact your authorised Škoda Service Partner, where your car is serviced regularly. You will receive a duplicate, in which the previously carried out service work are confirmed.

### Help on the road

contains the most important telephone numbers in individual countries as well as the addresses and telephone numbers of Škoda importers.

# Contents

## Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

## Using the system

### Cockpit

Overview

### The brief instruction

Basic functions and important information

### Instruments and Indicator/Warning Lights

Overview of the instrument cluster

Engine revolutions counter

Speedometer

Engine coolant temperature Display

Fuel gauge

Counter for distance driven

Service Interval Display

Digital clock

Recommended gear\*

Multi-functional indicator (onboard computer)\*

Warning lights

### Unlocking and locking

Key

Changing the battery in the remote control key

Electronic immobiliser

Child safety lock

Central locking system

Remote control\*

Synchronisation of the remote control

Anti-theft alarm system\*

Power windows\*

### Lights and Visibility

Lights

Interior lighting

Visibility

Windshield wiper and wash system

Rear-view mirror

### Seats and Stowage

Front seats

Head restraints

Middle rear head restraint\*

Rear seats

Pedals

Luggage compartment

Net partition\* (Combi)

The roof rack\*

Cup holder

Note holder

Ashtray\*

Cigarette lighter\*, power sockets

Storage compartments

Overview

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

Storage compartment on the driver's side

Storage compartment on the dash panel

Storage compartment in front centre console\*

Storage compartment in the front doors

Front seat armrest with storage compartment\*

Rear seat armrest with storage compartment\*

Storage compartment in rear centre console\*

Seat backrest with opening for skis\*

Clothes hooks\*

### Heating and air conditioning system

Air outlet vents

Heating

Climatic\*

### Starting-off and Driving

Setting steering wheel position

Ignition lock

Starting the engine

Switching off the engine

Shifting

Handbrake

Rear parking aid\*

Cruise control system (CCS)\*

### Communication

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

## Safety

### Passive Safety

Basic information

Correct seated position

### Seat belts

Why seat belts?

The physical principle of a frontal collision

Important safety information regarding the use of seat belts

How are seat belts correctly fastened?

### Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Front airbags

side airbags\*

Head airbags\*

Deactivating an airbag

### Transporting children safely

What you should know about transporting children!

Child seat

Attaching a child seat using the "ISOFIX" system

Attaching child seat using the "Top Tether"\* system

<b>Driving Tips</b> .....	111	Battery .....	146	1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4, EU2 .....	184
Intelligent Technology .....	111	Windshield washer system .....	150	2.0 l/81 kW TDI CR EU4 .....	186
Electronic stability programme (ESP)* .....	111	<b>Wheels and Tyres</b> .....	151		
Brakes .....	113	Wheels .....	151	<b>Index</b> .....	189
Brake booster .....	114	<b>Accessories, changing and replacing parts</b> .....	157		
Antilock brake system (ABS) .....	115	Accessories and replacement parts .....	157		
Brake Assist* .....	115	Technical changes .....	157		
Electromechanical power steering .....	116	Vehicles of category N1 .....	157		
Tyre inflation pressure-control system* .....	116				
<b>Driving and the Environment</b> .....	118	<b>Breakdown assistance</b> .....	159		
The first 1 500 kilometres and then afterwards ..	118	Breakdown assistance .....	159		
Catalytic converter .....	119	First-aid box* and Warning triangle* (Octavia) ..	159		
Driving in an economical and environmentally		First-aid box* and warning triangle* (Estate car) .	159		
conscious manner .....	119	Fire extinguisher* .....	159		
Environmental compatibility .....	122	Vehicle tool kit .....	159		
Motoring abroad .....	123	Spare wheel* .....	160		
Avoiding damage to your vehicle .....	123	Tyre repair kit* .....	160		
Driving through bodies of water on roads .....	124	Changing a wheel .....	161		
<b>Towing a trailer</b> .....	125	Jump-starting .....	165		
Towing a trailer .....	125	Tow-starting and towing vehicle .....	167		
		<b>Fuses and light bulbs</b> .....	169		
<b>General Maintenance</b> .....	129	Electric fuses .....	169		
Taking care of your vehicle and cleaning the		Bulbs .....	172		
vehicle .....	129				
General .....	129	<b>Technical Data</b> .....	179		
Care of the exterior of vehicle .....	129	Technical Data .....	179		
Care of the interior of vehicle .....	133	General information .....	179		
<b>Fuel</b> .....	136	Used abbreviations .....	179		
Petrol .....	136	Performances .....	179		
Diesel .....	137	Weight .....	179		
Refuelling .....	137	Identification details .....	179		
<b>Inspecting and replenishing</b> .....	139	Fuel consumption based on ECE regulations and EC			
Engine compartment .....	139	guidelines .....	180		
Engine oil .....	141	Dimensions .....	180		
Cooling system .....	143	Engine oil specifications .....	180		
Brake fluid .....	145	1.4 ltr./59 kW - EU5 .....	182		



## Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

The Owner's Manual has been systematically designed, in order to make it easy for you to find and absorb the information you require.

### Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is highlighted at the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

### Sections

The majority of **Sections** apply to all models.

Since there is a wide range of different equipment and options available it is clearly unavoidable, despite dividing the contents into sections, that mention may be made of equipment which is not fitted to your vehicle.

### Brief information and instructions

Each section has a **Heading**.

This is followed by **Brief information** (in large italic lettering), which tells you the subject which is dealt with in this section.

Most of the illustrations are accompanied by an **Instruction** (in relatively large letters) which explains to you in a straightforward way the action you have to take. **Work steps** which have to be carried out are illustrated with a hyphen.

### Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

### Explanation of symbols

\* Equipment which is marked in such a way is only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

■ End of a section.

► The section is continued on the next page.

### Notes

There are four kinds of notes. Notes always appear at the end of a section.



#### WARNING

**The most important notes are marked with the heading WARNING. A WARNING note draws your attention to a serious risk of accident or injury. While reading the text you will frequently encounter a double arrow followed by a small warning symbol. This symbol is intended to draw your attention to a WARNING note at the end of the section to which you must pay careful attention.**



#### Caution

A **Caution** note draws your attention to how you might avoid damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.



#### For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note has information about protecting the environment. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.



#### Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention in a general way to important information. ■

# Using the system



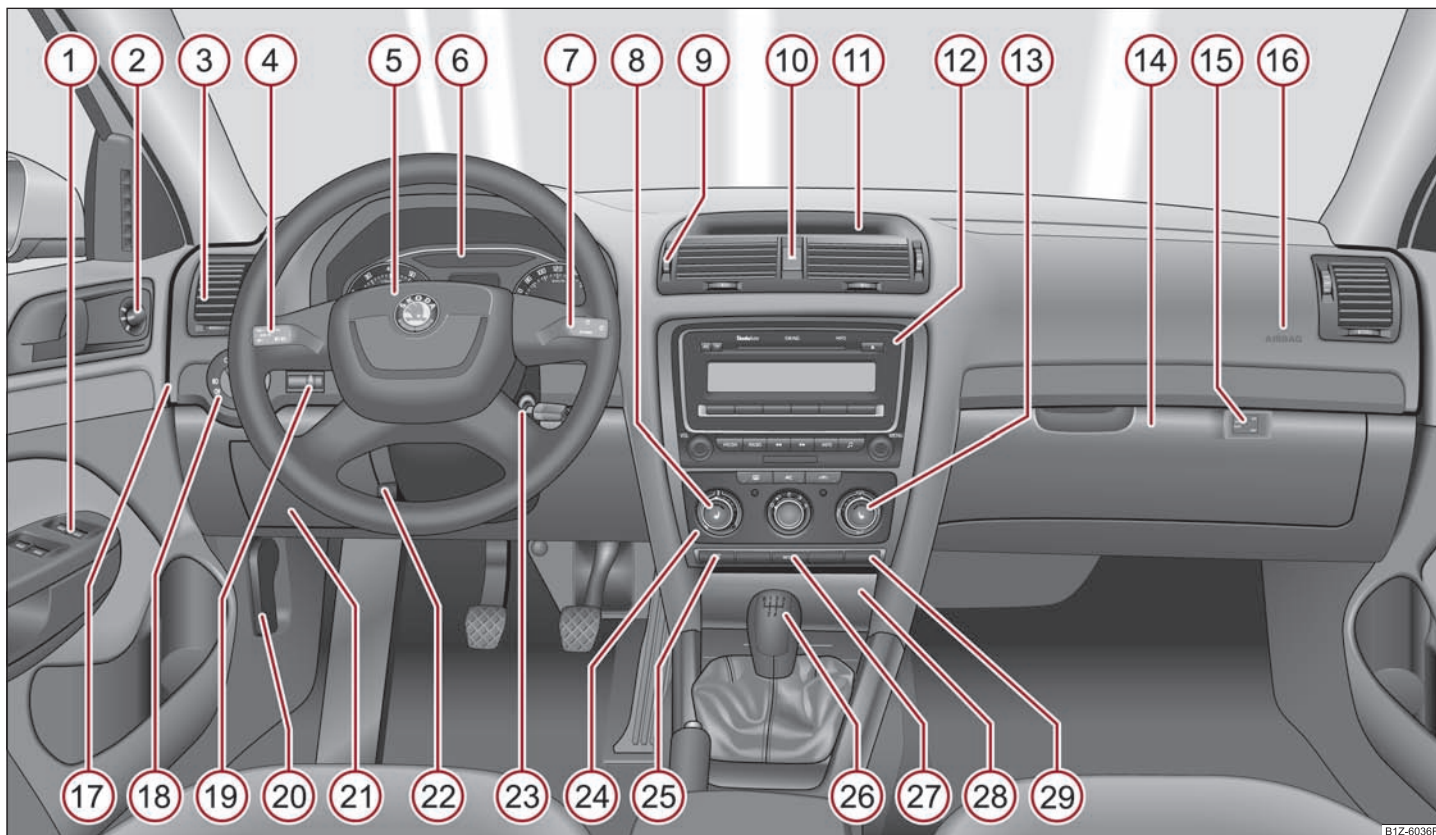


Fig. 1 Certain items of equipment shown in the illustration are only fitted to particular model versions or are optional items of equipment.

# Cockpit

## Overview

*This overview will help you to quickly familiarise yourself with the displays and the control elements.*

①	Button for automatically opening and closing the windows*	39	⑳	Lever for releasing the bonnet	139
②	Switch for adjusting the exterior mirrors*	50	㉑	Storage compartment on the driver's side	66
③	Air outlet vents	70	㉒	Lever for the adjustable steering column	10
④	Lever for the multi-functional switch:		㉓	Ignition lock	77
	– Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher	44	㉔	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	– Cruise control system*	82		– Controls for the heating	71
⑤	Steering wheel:			– Controls for Climatic*	73
	– with horn		㉕	Button for switching the Traction Control System (TCS) system on and off	112
	– with driver airbag	95	㉖	Gearshift lever	80
⑥	Instrument cluster: Instruments and indicator lights	15	㉗	Tyre inflation pressure-control system*	116
⑦	Lever for the multi-functional switch:		㉘	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	– Multi-functional indicator*	18		– Ashtray*	64
	– Windshield wiper and wash system	47		– Storage compartment*	67
⑧	Control knob for heating on the driver's seat*	56	㉙	Indicator light showing deactivated front seat passenger airbag*	101
⑨	Air outlet vents	70			
⑩	Button for switching the hazard warning light system on and off	44			
⑪	Storage compartment	66			
⑫	Radio*				
⑬	Control for heating on the front passenger's seat*	56			
⑭	Storage compartment on the front passenger side	66			
⑮	Key-operated switch for activating/deactivating the front passenger airbag* (in front passenger storage compartment)	101			
⑯	Front passenger airbag*	95			
⑰	Fuse box (on side of dash panel)	169			
⑱	Light switch	42			
⑲	Control for headlamp beam adjustment	43			

### Note

- Cars with factory-fitted radio are supplied with separate instructions for operating such equipment.
- The arrangement of the control elements on right-hand drive models may differ to some extent from that shown in [⇒ page 8, fig. 1](#). However the symbols correspond to the individual control elements. ■

## The brief instruction

### Basic functions and important information

#### Introduction

The chapter of the brief instruction is only used as a quick reference of the most important operating elements of the vehicle. It is necessary to observe all the information which is contained in the following chapters of the Owner's Manual.

#### Unlocking and locking the vehicle

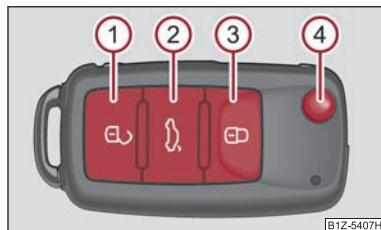


Fig. 2 Remote control key

- ① Unlocking the vehicle
- ② Unlocking the boot lid
- ③ Locking the vehicle
- ④ Folding out/folding up of the key bit

Further information ⇒ page 36, "Unlocking and locking the vehicle". ■

#### Setting steering wheel position

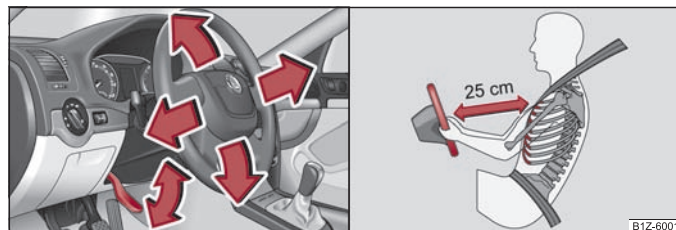


Fig. 3 Adjustable steering wheel: Lever on the steering column/the correct distance of the driver from the steering wheel

You can set the height and the forward/back position of the steering wheel to any desired position.

- Pull the lever below the steering column down ⇒ fig. 3 - left.
- Set the steering wheel to the desired position (concerning height and forward/back position).
- Push the lever upwards as far as the stop.

Further information ⇒ page 77, "Setting steering wheel position".

#### **WARNING**

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm ⇒ fig. 3 - right. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Only adjust the steering wheel when the car is stationary - danger of accident!
- For safety reasons the lever must always be firmly pushed up to avoid the steering wheel altering its position unintentionally when driving - risk of accident! ■

## Seat belt height adjuster

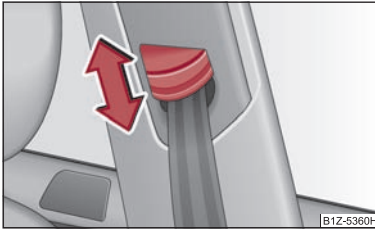


Fig. 4 Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

- Move the height adjuster in the desired direction up or down ⇒ fig. 4.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Further information ⇒ page 91, "Seat belt height adjuster".

### WARNING

Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is positioned approximately across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck! ■

## Adjusting the front seats



Fig. 5 Controls at seat

- ① Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
- ② Adjusting height of seat\*
- ③ Adjust the angle of the seat backrest
- ④ Adjusting lumbar support\*

Further information ⇒ page 52, "Adjusting the front seats".

### WARNING

Only adjust the driver seat when the vehicle is stationary - risk of injury! ■

## Electric exterior mirror adjustment\*

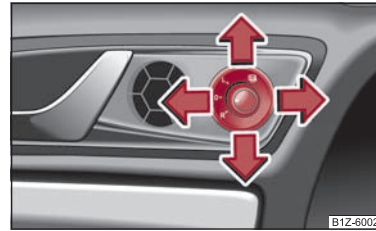


Fig. 6 Inner part of door: Rotary knob

	Heating of the external mirror
<b>L</b>	Adjusting left and right exterior mirrors simultaneously
<b>R</b>	Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror
<b>0</b>	Switching off operating control

Further information ⇒ page 50, "Exterior mirror". ■

### Switching lights on and off



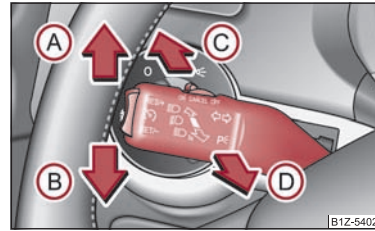
B1Z-6026F

Fig. 7 Dash panel: Light switch

0	Switching off all lights/daylight driving lights*
☞☞	Switching on side lights
☞☞	Switching on the low beam and main beam
☞☞	Fog lights*
☞☞	Rear fog light

Further information ⇒ page 42, "Switching lights on and off ☞☞". ■

### Turn signal and main beam lever



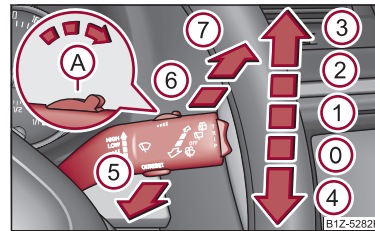
B1Z-6402H

Fig. 8 Turn signal and main beam lever

- Ⓐ Turn signal light right
- Ⓑ Turn signal light left
- Ⓒ Switching over between low beam and main beam lights
- Ⓓ Headlight flasher

Further information ⇒ page 44, "The turn signal ⇄ and main beam lever ☞☞". ■

### Windscreen wiper lever



B1Z-5282H

Fig. 9 Windscreen wiper lever

- Ⓐ Intermittent switch
- ⓪ Wipers off
- ① Intermittent wipe



- ② Slow wipe
- ③ Fast wipe
- ④ one time wipe
- ⑤ Automatic wipe/wash

#### Rear window wiper\*

- ⑥ Intermittent wipe - every 6 seconds
- ⑦ The automatic wiper/washer system

Further information ⇒ page 47, "Windshield wiper". ■

#### Power windows\*

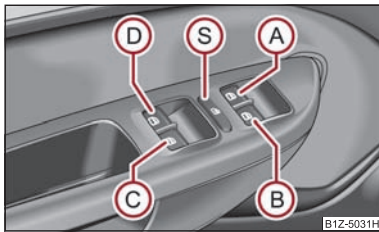


Fig. 10 Buttons on the driver's door

- Ⓐ Button for the power window in the driver's door
- Ⓑ Button for the power window in the front passenger's door
- Ⓒ Button for the power window at the rear right door
- Ⓓ Button for the power window at the rear left door
- Ⓢ Safety pushbutton for deactivating the power window buttons at the rear doors

Further information ⇒ page 39, "Power windows\*". ■

#### Refuelling

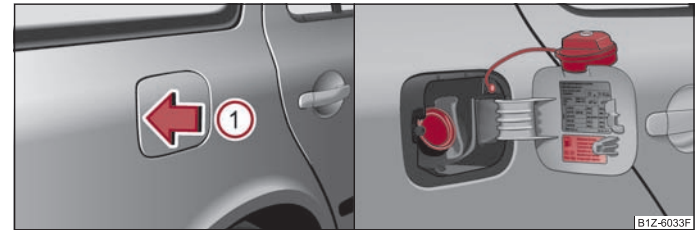


Fig. 11 Right rear side of the vehicle: Open fuel filler flap/fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed

- To open the fuel filler flap, press ① ⇒ fig. 11 in the direction of arrow.
- Release the cap by unlocking it by turning the vehicle key to the left.
- Unscrew the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise and place the fuel filler cap from above on the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 11 - right.

Further information ⇒ page 137, "Refuelling". ■

#### Bonnet remote release

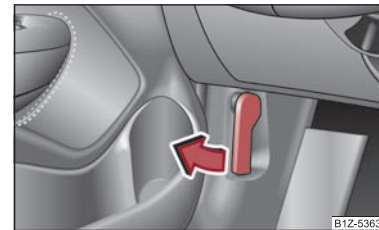


Fig. 12 Bonnet release lever

- Pull the unlocking lever below the dash panel on the driver's side ⇒ fig. 12. ■

## Opening the bonnet

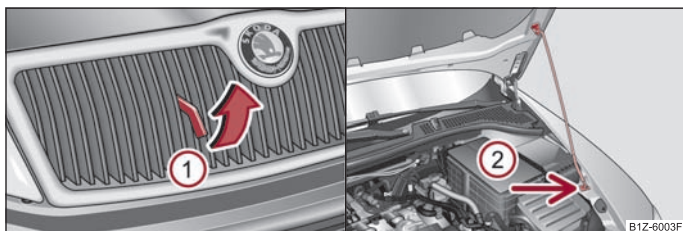


Fig. 13 Radiator grille: Release lever/securing the bonnet with the bonnet support

- Pulling on the release lever in direction of arrow ① ⇒ fig. 13 will unlock the bonnet.
- Take the bonnet support out of its holder and set it in the opening ② on the bonnet.

Further information ⇒ page 139, “Opening and closing the bonnet.”. ■

## Inspecting the engine oil level

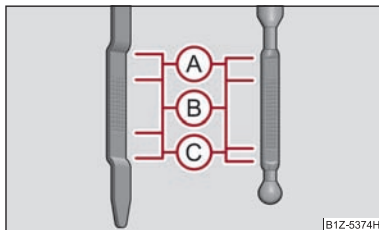


Fig. 14 Dipstick

- ① Engine oil **must not be** refilled.
- ② Engine oil **can** be refilled.
- ③ Engine oil **must** be refilled.

Further information ⇒ page 141, “Check engine oil level”. ■

## Instruments and Indicator/Warning Lights

### Overview of the instrument cluster

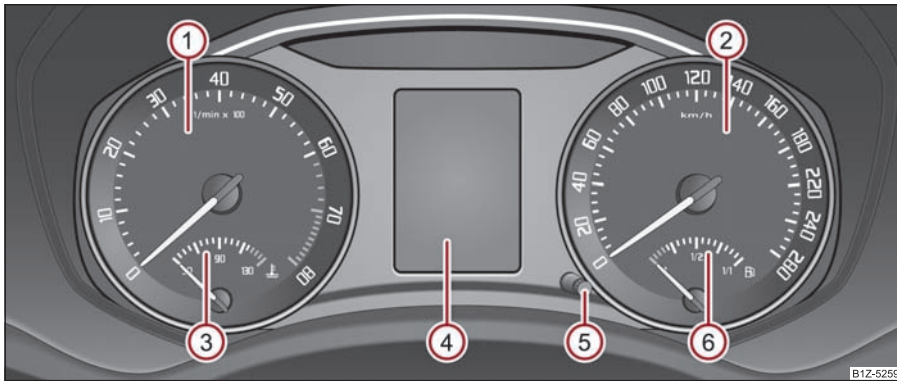


Fig. 15 Instrument cluster

- ① Engine revolutions counter ⇒ page 15
- ② Speedometer ⇒ page 16
- ③ Engine coolant temperature display ⇒ page 16
- ④ Display
  - with counter for distance driven ⇒ page 16
  - with Service Interval Display ⇒ page 17
  - with digital clock ⇒ page 18
  - with Multi-functional indicator\* ⇒ page 18
- ⑤ Button for the selection of the mode (turn button)/the setting (press button):
  - Set hours/minutes
  - Activating/deactivating the second speed in mph or km/h\*
  - Service interval - Display of the remaining number of days, kilometres or miles to the next Inspection Service/Reset\* <sup>1)</sup>
  - Reset trip counter for distance driven

- Resetting Service Interval Display
- Activate/deactivate display mode

- ⑥ Fuel gauge ⇒ page 16 ■

### Engine revolutions counter

The red zone in the revolutions counter (① ⇒ fig. 15) indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears for an engine which has been run in and operating at a normal temperature. Before reaching the red zone of the rev counter scale, shift up into the next higher gear. The engine control unit restricts the engine speed to a steady limit value.

Before reaching the red zone of the rev counter scale, shift up into the next higher gear. ►

<sup>1)</sup> Valid for countries where the values are indicated in British measuring units.



Avoid high engine speeds during the driving time and before the engine has reached operating temperature ⇒ page 118.



### For the sake of the environment

Shifting up early helps you save fuel and reduce the operating noise of your vehicle. ■

## Speedometer

The speedometer shows the current speed of the car. ■

## Engine coolant temperature Display


The coolant temperature gauge ③ ⇒ page 15, fig. 15 operates only when the ignition is switched on.



In order to avoid any damage to the engine, please pay attention to the following notes regarding the temperature ranges:

### Cold range

If the pointer is in the left-hand area of the scale it means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid running at high engine speeds, at full throttle and at severe engine loads.

### The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. The pointer may also move further to the right at high engine loads and high outside temperatures. This is not critical provided the warning symbol  in the instrument cluster does not flash.

If the symbol  in the instrument cluster flashes it means that either the coolant **temperature** is too high or the coolant **level** is too low. Observe the guidelines ⇒ page 25, "Coolant temperature/coolant level ".



### WARNING


Pay attention to the warning notes ⇒ page 140, "Working in the engine compartment" before opening the bonnet and inspecting the coolant level.

### ⚠ Caution

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the fresh air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant. There is then a risk of the engine overheating at high outside temperatures and high engine loads! ■

## Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge ⑥ ⇒ page 15, fig. 15 only works when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres. The warning symbol  in the instrument cluster lights up when the pointer reaches the reserve marking. There are now about 9 litres of fuel remaining in the tank. This symbol is a reminder for you, **that you must refuel.**

An acoustic signal sounds as an additional reminder.

### ⚠ Caution

Never run the fuel tank completely empty! The irregular supply of the fuel system can lead to irregular running of the engine. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter. ■

## Counter for distance driven

The distance which you have driven with your vehicle is shown in kilometres (km). In some countries the measuring unit "mile" is used.

### Reset button

Hold the reset button ⑤ ⇒ page 15, fig. 15 pressed for approx. 1 second. The trip counter is reset to zero.

### Trip counter for distance driven

The trip counter shows the distance driven since the time the trip counter was last erased. The trip is shown in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile. ▶

## Odometer

The odometer indicates the total distance in kilometres or miles which the vehicle has been driven.

## Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster **Error** will appear in the display. Contact a specialist garage.

### WARNING

**Never seek to adjust the trip counter for distance driven while driving for safety reasons!**

### Note


If the display of the second speed is activated in mph or km/h, this speed is shown instead of the odometer on the display. ■

## Service Interval Display




Fig. 16 Service Interval Display: Note

### Service Interval Display

Before the next service interval a key symbol  and the remaining kilometres are indicated after switching on the ignition ⇒ fig. 16. At the same time, a display appears regarding the remaining days until the next service interval.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km. or days until the service due date is reached.

A flashing key symbol  and the text **Service** appears in the display for 20 seconds as soon as the due date for the service is reached.

### Resetting Service Interval Display

It is only possible to reset the Service Interval Display, if a service message or at least a pre-warning is shown on the display of the instrument cluster.

We recommend having this resetting performed by a specialist garage.

The specialist garage:

- resets the memory of the display after the appropriate inspection,
- makes an entry in the Service schedule,
- affix the sticker with the entry of the following service interval to the side of the dash panel on the driver's side.

This can be reset as follows: Press the button  ⇒ page 15, fig. 15 and keep it pressed down, start the ignition, release the button and turn it to the left or right.

### Caution

We recommend you ask a specialist garage to reset the service interval display. Incorrectly setting the service interval display can cause problems to the vehicle.

### Note

- Never reset the display between service intervals otherwise this may result in incorrect readouts.
- information is retained in the Service Interval Display also after the battery of the vehicle is disconnected.
- The service interval display will need to be re-configured if the instrument cluster is replaced. Contact a specialist garage. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.
- The data displayed is the same after resetting the display with flexible service intervals (QG1) using the reset button as that for a vehicle with fixed service intervals (QG2). We therefore recommend having the Service Interval Display reset only by an authorised Škoda Service Partner who is familiar with the procedure for resetting the display with a vehicle system tester.
- Please refer to the brochure Service schedule for extensive information about the service intervals. ■

## Digital clock

You can set the time with the rotary knob (5) ⇒ page 15, fig. 15.

Select the information which you wish to change by turning the button (5) and carry out the change of the selected information by pressing the button.

### WARNING

**The clock should not be adjusted while driving for safety reasons but only when the vehicle is stationary! ■**

## Recommended gear\*

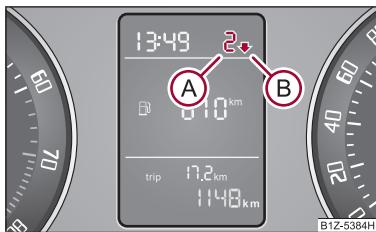


Fig. 17 Recommended gear

An information for the selected gear (A) ⇒ fig. 17 is shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

If the control unit recognises that it is appropriate to change the gear, an arrow (B) is shown in the display. The arrow points upwards or downwards depending on whether it is recommended to switch to a higher or lower gear.

At the same time, the recommended gear is indicated instead of the currently selected gear (A). ■

## Multi-functional indicator (onboard computer)\*

### Introduction

This data from the multi-functional indicator appears in the display ⇒ fig. 18.

The multi-functional indicator offers you a range of useful information.

The outside temperature	⇒ page 20
Driving time	⇒ page 20
Current fuel consumption	⇒ page 20
Average fuel consumption	⇒ page 20
Range	⇒ page 20
Distance driven	⇒ page 20
Average speed	⇒ page 21
Current speed*	⇒ page 21
Warning against excessive speeds*	⇒ page 21

### Note

In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures. ■

### Memory



Fig. 18 Multi-functional indicator

The multi-functional indicator is equipped with two automatic memories. The selected memory is displayed in the middle of the display field ⇒ page 18, fig. 18.

The data of the single-trip memory (memory 1) is shown if a **1** appears in the display. A **2** shown in the display means that data relates to the total distance memory (memory 2).

Switching over the memory takes place with the button **(B)** ⇒ fig. 19 on the windshield wiper lever.

### Single-trip memory (memory 1)

The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition. The memory will be automatically erased, on the other hand, if the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**.

### Total-trip memory (memory 2)

The total distance driven memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes driving or 1.999 kilometres driven. The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts from anew.

The total-trip memory will not, contrary to the single-trip memory, be deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.



### Note

All information in the memory **1** and **2** is erased if the battery of the vehicle is disconnected. ■

## Operating with the buttons on the windshield wiper lever

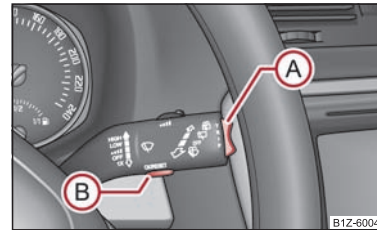


Fig. 19 Multi-functional indicator: Control elements

The rocker **(A)** and the button **(B)** are located in the grip of the window wiper lever ⇒ fig. 19.

### Selecting the memory

- Tapping the rocker **(B)** on the windshield wiper lever allows you to select the desired memory.

### Selecting the functions

- Press the rocker **(A)** up or down. In this way, call up in sequence the individual functions of the multi-functional indicator.

### Setting function to zero

- Select the memory you want.
- Press button **(B)**.

The following readouts of the selected memory will be set to zero by button **(B)**:

- average fuel consumption,
- distance driven,
- average speed,
- Driving time.

You can only operate the multi-functional indicator when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition. ■

## Outside temperature

The outside temperature appears in the display when the ignition is switched on.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C, a snow flake symbol (warning signal for ice on the road) appears before the temperature indicator and a warning signal sounds. After pressing the rocker (A) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 19, fig. 19, the function which was shown last is indicated.



### WARNING

**Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road. Please note that black ice may also be present on the road surface even at temperatures around +4 °C – warning, drive with care!** ■

## Driving time

The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased, appears in the display. If you wish to measure the driving time as of a particular time, you must set the memory to zero at this moment in time by pressing the button (B) ⇒ page 19, fig. 19 on the windshield wiper lever for longer than 1 second.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to null if this period is exceeded. ■

## Current consumption

The current fuel consumption level is shown in the display in litres/100 km. This information can help you to adapt your style of driving to the fuel consumption you wish to achieve.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed.

The indicated value will be updated every 0.5 seconds while you are driving. ■

## Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in litres/100 km ⇒ page 18. This information can help you to adapt your style of driving to the fuel consumption you wish to achieve.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero using the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever. A zero appears in the display for the first 100 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The indicated value will be updated every 5 seconds while you are driving.



### Note

The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated. ■

## Range

The estimated range in kilometres is shown on the display. It indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the current level of fuel in the tank for the same style of driving.

The readout is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the indicator light for the fuel reserve the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption for the last 50 km is taken as a basis for calculating the range. If you drive in a more economical manner, the range will be increased accordingly.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), the fuel consumption of 10 ltr./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is adapted accordingly to the style of driving. ■

## Distance driven

The distance driven since the memory was last erased appears in the display ⇒ page 18. If you wish to calculate the distance driven as of a particular time, you must erase the memory at this moment in time by pressing the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 19, fig. 19. ▶

The maximum distance indicated in both switch positions is 1,999 km. The indicator is set back to null if this period is exceeded. ■

## Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in km/hour ⇒ page 18. If you wish to determine the average speed over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero using the button **(B)** on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 19, fig. 19.

Dashes appear in the display for the first 100 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The indicated value will be updated every 5 seconds while you are driving. ■

## Current speed\*

The current speed is displayed on the display. It is identical to the display on the tachometer (speedometer) **(2)** ⇒ page 15, fig. 15.



### Note

If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed\* is not indicated in km/h on the display. ■

## Warning against excessive speeds\*

This function enables you to set a speed limit and will notify you if you exceed this speed limit.

### Configuring the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

- With switch **(A)** ⇒ page 19, fig. 19, choose the menu point **Warning against excessive speeds**.
- Press the switch **(B)** to activate configuration of the speed limit (the value flashes).
- Use switch **(A)** to set the required speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
- Confirm the speed limit that was set with button **(B)**, or wait 5 seconds until the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

In this way you can set the limit in 5 km/h steps.

### Configuring the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

- With switch **(A)**, choose the menu point **Warning against excessive speeds**.
- Drive e.g. at a speed of 50 km/h.
- Press the switch **(B)** to accept the current speed as the speed limit (the value flashes).

If you wish to change the speed limit that was set, it is changed in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

- Confirm the speed limit that was set by pressing button **(B)** again, or wait 5 seconds until the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

### Changing or erasing the speed limit

- With switch **(A)**, choose the menu point **Warning against excessive speeds**.
- When you press the switch **(B)** again, the speed limit is erased.
- Pressing the switch **(B)** a further time activates the change mode for the speed limit.

If you exceed the configured speed, an acoustic signal will sound as a warning. A **Warning against excessive speeds** appears together with the set limit on the display.
















The set speed limit remains stored even after switching off the ignition.



### WARNING

**Pay attention primarily to the traffic situation! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety. ■**



	Coolant temperature/coolant level	⇒ page 25
	Traction control system (TCS)	⇒ page 26
	Electronic stability programme (ESP)*	⇒ page 26
	Switch off the Traction control system (TCS);	⇒ page 26
	Tyre pressure*	⇒ page 27
	Antilock brake system (ABS)	⇒ page 27
	Bonnet	⇒ page 27
	Seat belt warning light	⇒ page 28
	Brake pad wear*	⇒ page 28
	Boot lid	⇒ page 28
	Open door	⇒ page 28
	Brake system	⇒ page 28
	Dynamo	⇒ page 28
	Engine oil level	⇒ page 29
	Fuel reserve	⇒ page 29



### WARNING

- If you do not pay attention to the warning lights coming on and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes, this may result in severe body injuries or major vehicle damage.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. It is also essential to observe all warnings ⇒ page 140, "Working in the engine compartment".

### Note

- The arrangement of the indicator lights depends on the model version. The symbols shown in the following functional description are to be found as indicator lights in the instrument cluster.
- Operational faults are shown in the instrument cluster as red symbols (priority 1 - danger) or yellow symbols (priority 2 - warning). ■

### Turn signal system


Either the left  or right  indicator light flashes depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a turn signal light fails.


Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both indicator lights to flash.

Further information about the turn signal system ⇒ page 44. ■

### Fog lights\*

The warning light  comes on when the fog lights are operating ⇒ page 43. ■

### Main beam

The indicator light  comes on when the main beam is selected or also when the headlight flasher is operated. ▶




Further information about the main beam ⇒ page 44. ■


### Low beam

The warning light  comes on when low beam is selected ⇒ page 42. ■

### Rear fog light

The warning light  comes on when the rear fog lights are operating ⇒ page 43. ■


### Cruise control system\*

The warning light  lights up, when operating the speed regulating system. ■

### Bulb failure


The warning light  comes on if a bulb is faulty:


- up to 2 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- when switching on the defective light bulb.

The rear side lights and the licence plate lighting require several light bulbs. The indicator light  only lights up if all light bulbs of the licence plate lighting or the parking light (in one rear light unit) are defective. Check regularly the function of the light bulbs. ■

### Airbag system


#### Monitoring the airbag system

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.


There is a fault in the system if the warning light does not go out or flashes while driving ⇒ . This also applies if the warning light does not come on when the ignition is switched on.

The functionality of the airbag system is also monitored electronically when one airbag has been switched off.

#### Front, side and head airbags or belt tensioner which have been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

- The warning light  lights up for 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for 12 seconds in intervals of 2 seconds.

#### Front passenger airbags switched off using the switch for front passenger airbags\* in storage compartment on the front passenger side:

- the warning light  comes on for 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on,
- switching off the airbag is indicated in the middle of the dash panel by the lighting up of the indicator light **AIRBAG OFF (airbag switched off)** ⇒ page 101.



#### WARNING


**Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage if a fault exists. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident. ■**

### Control system for exhaust



The warning light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

If the warning light does not go out after starting the engine or it lights up when driving, a fault exists in an exhaust relevant component. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving. ■

### Electromechanical power steering

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light after switching on the ignition or when driving lights up continuously, a fault exists in the electromechanical power steering.



- If the **yellow** warning light lights up , this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.
- If the **red** warning light lights up , this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces). ▶

Further information ⇒ page 116.


### WARNING

Contact your specialist garage if the power steering is defective.

### Note

- If the yellow warning light  goes out after starting the engine again and a short drive, it is not necessary to visit a specialist garage.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the yellow warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

### Engine oil pressure

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

**Stop the vehicle and switch the engine off** if the warning light does not go off after the engine has started or flashes while driving. Check the oil level and top up with oil as necessary ⇒ page 142, "Replenishing engine oil".

An audible signal sounds three times as an additional warning signal.


**Do not continue your journey** if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with oil. **Keep the engine switched off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

**Do not drive any further** if the warning light flashes even if the oil is at the correct level. Do not run the engine not at idling speed either. Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

### WARNING


- **If you must stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic and switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system.**

### WARNING (continued)


- **The red oil pressure light  is not an oil level indicator! One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably after every refuelling stop. ■**

### EPC fault light (petrol engine)


The **EPC** (Electronic Power Control) warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.


If the warning light  does not go out or lights up after starting the engine, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving. ■

### Glow plug system (diesel engine)


The warning light  lights up for a **cold** engine when switching on the ignition (pre-heat position) ② ⇒ page 77. Start the engine after the indicator light goes out.


The glow plug indicator light will come on for about 1 second if the engine is at a **normal operating temperature** or if the outside temperature is above +5 °C. This means that you can start the engine **right away**.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the **warning light  does not come on at all or lights up continuously**. Contact a specialist garage as soon as possible to obtain assistance.

If the **warning light  begins to flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving. ■

### Coolant temperature/coolant level

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

The coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level too low if the warning light  does not go out or flashes while driving. ►

3 peeps sound as an additional warning signal.

**In this case stop and switch the engine off** and check the coolant level; top up the coolant as necessary.

**Do not continue your journey** if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with coolant. **Keep the engine switched off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

If the coolant is within the specified range, the increased temperature may be caused by an operating problem at the coolant fan. Check the fuse for the coolant fan, replace it if necessary ⇒ page 170, "Fuse assignment in engine compartment".


**Do not continue driving** if the warning light does not go off although the fluid is at the correct level and also the fuse of the fan is in proper order. Contact a specialist garage to obtain assistance.

Please also refer to the additional instructions ⇒ page 143, "Cooling system".

### WARNING

- **If you must stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic and switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system** ⇒ page 44.
- **Take care when opening the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized – risk of scalding! It is best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.**
- **Do not touch the coolant fan. The coolant fan may switch on automatically even if the ignition is off.** ■


### Traction control system (TCS)

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

The warning light flashes when a control cycle is activated while driving.


The warning light lights up permanently if there is a fault in the system.

The fact that the TCS system operates together with the ABS means that the TCS warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.


If the warning light  comes on immediately after starting the engine, the TCS system can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the TCS system can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the TCS system is fully functional again.

Further information about the TCS ⇒ page 112, "Traction control system (TCS)".

### Note


If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

### Switch off the Traction control system (TCS)

The TCS system is switched off by pressing the button ⇒ page 112, fig. 112 and the warning light lights up . ■


### Electronic stability programme (ESP)\*

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

When the ESP system is actively helping to stabilise the vehicle, the warning light in the instrument cluster  flashes quickly.

The warning light lights up permanently if there is a fault in the ESP system.

The fact that the ESP system operates together with the ABS means that the ESP warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

If the warning light  comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ESP system can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the ESP system can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the ESP system is fully functional again.


Further information on the ESP ⇒ page 111, "Electronic stability programme (ESP)\*".

### Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)\*


The EDL is a part of the ESP. A fault in the EDL is indicated by the ESP warning light in the instrument cluster. Have the vehicle inspected without delay by an authorised ▶

Škoda Service Partner. Further information on the EDL ⇒ page 112, “Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)\*”.

### Note

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■



## Tyre inflation pressure\*

The warning light  lights up, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Reduce the speed and check or correct as soon as possible the inflation pressure in the tyres ⇒ page 151.


If the warning light flashes, there is a system fault. Visit the nearest specialist garage and have the fault rectified.

Further information about tyre pressure-control system ⇒ page 116.


### WARNING

- When the warning light  lights up, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Please stop the vehicle without delay at the nearest possible stop and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressures.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light  can be delayed or does not light up at all.

### Note


If the battery has been disconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

## Antilock brake system (ABS)

The warning light  shows the functionality of the ABS.




The warning light comes on for a few seconds after the ignition has been switched on or when starting the engine. The warning light goes out after an automatic check sequence has been completed.

### A fault in the ABS



The system is not functioning properly if the ABS warning light  does not go out within a few seconds after switching on the ignition, does not light up at all or lights up while driving. The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system. Visit a specialist garage as quickly as possible and adjust your style of driving appropriately as you will not know how great the damage is.

Further information about ABS ⇒ page 115, “Antilock brake system (ABS)”.



### A fault in the entire brake system

If the ABS warning light  comes on together with the brake system warning light  (handbrake must be released), there is a fault not only in the ABS but also in another part of the brake system ⇒ .

### WARNING


- If the brake system warning light  comes on together with the ABS warning light  stop the vehicle immediately and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ page 145, “Brake fluid”. If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further - risk of accident! Obtain professional assistance.
- Pay attention to the following instructions before checking the brake fluid level and opening the bonnet ⇒ page 140, “Working in the engine compartment”.
- If the brake fluid is at the correct level, the ABS control function has failed. The rear wheels may then block very rapidly when braking. In certain circumstances, this can result in the rear end of the car breaking away - risk of skidding! Drive carefully to the nearest specialist garage and have the fault rectified. ■


## Bonnet

The warning light  comes on if the bonnet is unlocked. If the bonnet unlocks while driving, the warning light lights up  and as a warning an audible signal sounds. ▶

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes. ■

### Seat belt warning light


The warning light  comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the seat belt. The warning light only goes out if the driver has fastened his seat belt.

If the seat belt has not been fastened by the driver, a permanent warning signal sounds at vehicle speeds greater than 20 km/h and simultaneously the warning light flashes .

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver during the next 90 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light  lights up permanently.



Further information on the seat belts ⇒ page 89, "Seat belts". ■

### Thickness of the brake pads\*

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.



If the warning light  comes on, contact a specialist garage immediately and have the brake pads on **all of the wheels** inspected. ■

### Boot lid

The warning light  comes on when the ignition is switched on if the luggage compartment door is open. If the boot lid opens while driving , the warning light lights up and an audible signal sounds.


The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes. ■



### Open door




The warning light  comes on if one or several doors are opened or if the boot lid is opened. If one of the doors opens while driving, the warning light lights  up and an audible signal sounds.

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes. ■

### Brake system

The warning light  flashes or comes on if the brake fluid level is too low, if there is a fault in the ABS or if the handbrake is applied.

If the warning light  flashes and an audible signal sounds three times (handbrake is not applied), **stop** and check the brake fluid level ⇒ .


If there is a fault in the ABS which also influences the function of the brake system (e.g. distribution of brake pressure), the ABS warning light  comes on and at the same time the brake system warning light starts flashing . Be aware that not only the ABS but also another part of the brake system is defective ⇒ .

An audible signal sounds three times as an additional warning signal.

One should get used to high pedal forces, long braking distances and long free play of the brake pedal when driving to the next specialist garage.


For further information on the brake system ⇒ page 113, "Brakes".

### Handbrake applied


The warning light  also comes on if the handbrake is applied. An audible warning is also given if you drive the vehicle for at least 3 seconds at a speed of more than 6 km/h.



#### WARNING



- Pay attention to the following instructions before checking the brake fluid level and opening the bonnet ⇒ page 140, "Working in the engine compartment".
- If the brake system warning light  does not go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition or comes on when driving, stop immediately and check the brake fluid in the reservoir ⇒ page 145. If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further - risk of accident! Obtain professional assistance. ■

### Alternator

The warning light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on. It should go out after the engine has started. ▶


If the warning light does not go out after the engine has started, or comes on when driving, drive to the nearest specialist garage. The vehicle battery will be discharged in this case so switch off all non-essential electrical components.

### **Caution**

If the warning light  comes on when driving and in addition the warning light  (cooling system fault) also comes on in display, you must then stop the car immediately and switch the engine off - risk of engine damage! ■

## Engine oil level

### Warning light lights up

If the warning light  lights up, the quantity of oil in the engine is probably too low. Check as soon as possible the oil level or top up ⇒ page 142, "Replenishing engine oil" with engine oil.

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal.


The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

### Warning light flashes

A fault on the engine oil level sensor is indicated additionally by an audible signal and the warning light coming on several times after the ignition has been switched on.

**In this case have the engine inspected without delay by a specialist garage. ■**

## Fuel reserve

The warning light  comes on, if the fuel level is still below 9 litres.

An audible signal sounds as an additional warning signal. ■

## Unlocking and locking

### Key

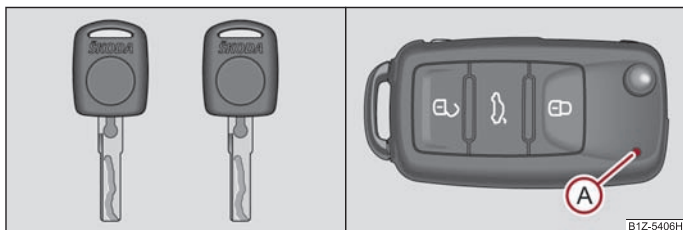


Fig. 21 Set of keys without remote control/set of keys with remote control key

Two keys are provided with the vehicle. Depending on the equipment, your vehicle can be equipped with keys without radio remote control ⇒ fig. 21 - left, or with radio remote control\* ⇒ fig. 21 - right.

#### WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle - even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) - risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally - risk of accident!

#### Caution

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore protect them against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean as impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the proper operation of the locking cylinder and the ignition lock.

#### Note

Please approach an authorised Škoda Service Partner if you lose a key since he can obtain a new one for you. ■

## Changing the battery in the remote control key

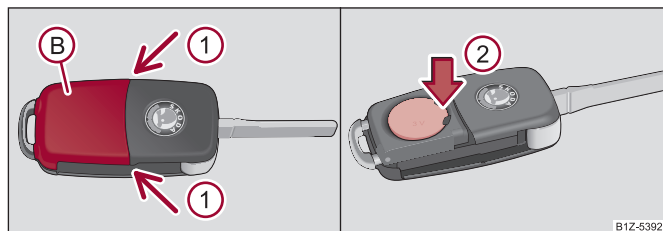


Fig. 22 Remote control key - remove cover/remove battery

Each remote control key contains a battery which is housed under the cover **B** ⇒ fig. 22. If the battery is discharged, the red indicator light **A** does not light up after pressing a button on the remote control ⇒ fig. 21. Change the battery as follows:

- Fold open the key.
- Carefully press off the battery cover at the points of the arrows **1** ⇒ fig. 22.
- Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery downwards at the point of the arrow **2** ⇒ fig. 22.
- Insert the new battery. Ensure that the “+” symbol on the battery is facing upwards. The correct polarity is shown on the battery cover.
- Position the battery cover on the key and press on it until it is heard to lock in place.



#### For the sake of the environment

Dispose of a used battery in accordance with environmental regulations. ►

**i Note**

- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.
- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- If it is still not possible to unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control even after replacing the battery this means that the system has to be synchronised ⇒ page 37. ■

## Electronic immobiliser

*The electronic immobiliser prevents the vehicle being operated by an unauthorised person.*

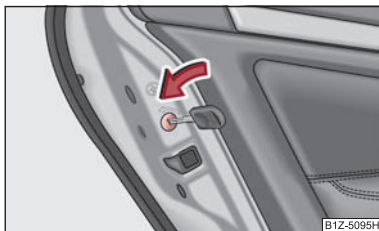
An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when you withdraw the ignition key from the lock.

**i Note**

It is only possible to start the engine of your car with a Genuine Škoda key with the matching code. ■

## Child safety lock

*The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside.*



**Fig. 23** Child safety locks on the rear doors

The rear doors are equipped with a child safety lock. You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

### Switching child safety lock on

- Use the vehicle key to turn the slit in the rear door to the left in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 23.

### Switching child safety lock off

- Use the vehicle key to turn the slit to the right against the direction of the arrow.

So long as the child safety lock is switched on it is not possible to open the door from the inside with the door opening lever. In this case the door can be opened only from the outside. ■

## Central locking system

### Description

Unlocking or locking the vehicle causes **all** doors to be unlocked or locked at the same time by the central locking system. The boot lid is unlocked when opening. It can be opened by pressing the hand grip above the licence plate ⇒ page 35.

Operation of the central locking system is possible:

- from the outside using the vehicle key ⇒ page 33,
- using the button for the central locking system ⇒ page 33,
- by using the remote control ⇒ page 36.

### Indicator light in the driver's door on vehicles without anti-theft alarm system

After the car is locked, the indicator light flashes after 2 seconds.

After the car is locked with the deactivated safe securing system, the indicator light flashes only after 30 seconds.

### Indicator light in the driver's door on vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

After locking the vehicle the indicator light flashes for 2 seconds fast, then more slowly. ►



If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system ⇒ page 32 is not operating, the indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash slowly after about 30 seconds.

If the indicator light first of all flashes fast for about 2 seconds, afterwards lights up for about 30 seconds and then flashes slowly, there is a fault in the system of the central locking or the interior monitor\* ⇒ page 38. Visit a specialist garage to obtain assistance.

### Convenience operation of the windows\*

One can open and close the electrically powered windows when unlocking and locking the vehicle ⇒ page 41.


### Opening a single door\*

This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the command is repeated.

If you wish, you can have your authorised Škoda Service Partner activate the function of the single door opening mode.

### Automatic unlocking and locking\*

All the doors and the boot lid are locked automatically once the car reaches a speed of about 15 km/h.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button  or by pulling the door opening lever.

If you wish, you can have a specialist garage activate the automatic locking function.

### WARNING

**Locking the doors prevents involuntary opening in an exceptional situation (an accident). Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings. Locked doors do, however, make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency - danger to life!**

### Note

• In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

- Only the front doors can be unlocked and locked using the key if the central locking system fails. You can lock or unlock manually the other doors and the boot lid.
  - Emergency locking of the door ⇒ page 34.
  - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid ⇒ page 35. ■

## Safe securing

The central locking system is equipped with a **safe securing**<sup>2)</sup> system. Locking the vehicle from the outside causes the door locks to be automatically blocked. It is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside. This acts as an effective deterrent for attempts to break into your vehicle.

You can deactivate the safe securing system by locking twice within 2 seconds.

If the safe securing system is not operating, the warning light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash slowly again after about 30 seconds.

The safe securing system is again activated the next time the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

The doors can be opened from the inside if the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is deactivated:

- The door is unlocked by actuating the door-opening lever.
- The door opens upon actuating the door-opening lever again.

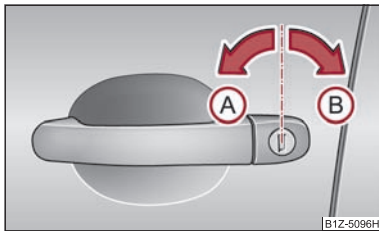
### WARNING

**If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person and animals in the vehicle as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency - hazard!**

<sup>2)</sup> Only valid for some countries.

**i Note**

The anti-theft alarm system\* is also activated with the deactivated safe securing system when locking the vehicle. The interior monitor\* is however not activated. ■

**Unlocking the vehicle using the key**

**Fig. 24** Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of travel (unlock position) **A** ⇒ fig. 24.
- Pull on the door handle and open the door.
- All the doors (only the driver's door on vehicles with anti-theft alarm system) are unlocked.
- The boot lid is then unlocked.
- The switched on interior lights come on over the door contact.
- The safe securing system is deactivated.
- The windows open provided the key **is held\*** in the unlock position. On vehicles fitted with anti-theft alarm system the window operation is only possible 45 seconds after deactivation of the warning system.
- The indicator light in the driver's door stops flashing if the vehicle is not fitted with an anti-theft alarm system\* ⇒ page 37.

**i Note**

If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system\*, you must insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after unlocking the door

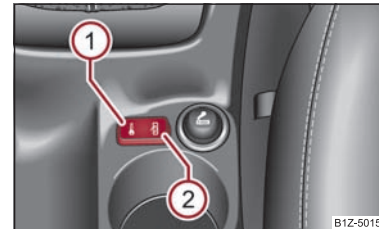
in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm will be triggered** if you do **not switch on** the ignition within 15 seconds. ■

**Locking the vehicle with the key**

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the opposite direction of travel (lock position) **B** ⇒ fig. 24.
- All the doors and the boot lid are locked.
- The switched on interior lights will switch off over the door contact.
- The windows close provided the key **is held** in the lock position.\*
- The safe securing system is activated immediately.
- The indicator light in the driver door begins flashing.

**i Note**

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked. ■

**Button for the central locking system**

**Fig. 25** Centre console: Buttons for central locking

If the vehicle was not locked from outside, you can also unlock and lock it with the rocker switch on the centre console without the ignition switched on.

**Locking all doors and the boot lid**

- Press button **1** ⇒ fig. 25. The symbol in the button comes on. ▶

## Unlocking all doors and the boot lid

- Press button ② ⇒ page 33, fig. 25. The symbol  goes out in the button.

The following applies if you have locked your vehicle using the button ①:

- It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
- You can unlock the doors individually from the inside and open them by pulling the door opening lever.
- As long as one door is opened<sup>3)</sup>, the vehicle cannot be locked in order to avoid inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

By pressing and holding the button ① or ②, you can conveniently close or open the windows ⇒ page 41.

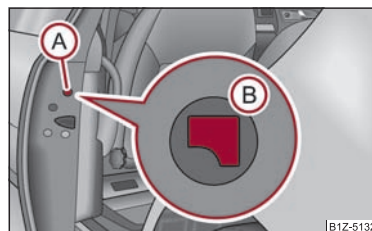
### WARNING

**The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off. All the doors and the boot lid are locked. Children should never be left unattended in the vehicle since it is difficult to provide assistance from the outside when the doors are locked. Locked doors make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency - hazard!**

### Note

The door opening lever and the buttons for the central locking system do not operate if the safe securing system is activated. ■



## Emergency locking of the doors



**Fig. 26 Rear door: Emergency locking of the door**

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the rear side of the doors which have no locking cylinder; it is only visible after opening the door.

### Locking

- Remove the panel  ⇒ fig. 26.
- Insert the key into the opening under the panel and press the stopping lever  as far as the stop toward the inside.
- Re-insert the panel.

After closing the door, you can no longer open it from outside. If the child safety lock is not switched on, it is possible to open the door from the inside by pulling twice on the door handle. If the child safety lock is switched on, it is necessary to also open the door from outside besides pulling twice on the inner door handle. ■

<sup>3)</sup> Is not valid for the boot lid.

## Boot lid

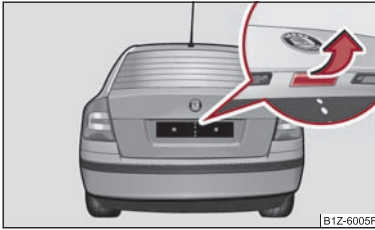


Fig. 27 Handle of boot lid

Open the boot lid by pressing the hand grip above the licence plate after unlocking the vehicle using the key or the radio remote control.

### Opening the boot lid

- Press on the handle ⇒ fig. 27 and at the same time raise the boot lid.

### Closing the boot lid

- Pull the boot lid down and close it with a slight swing ⇒ ⚠.

A handle which makes the closing easier is located on the inner panelling of the boot lid.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if the boot lid lock is closed – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack – risk of injury!

### 📄 Note

- After closing the boot lid, it is automatically locked within 2 second and the anti-theft alarm system\* is activated. This applies only if the vehicle was locked before closing the boot lid.
- The function of the hand grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or as of a speed of more than 5 km/hour for vehicles with central locking. The function of the hand grip is activated again when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened. ■

## Emergency unlocking of the boot lid (Octavia)

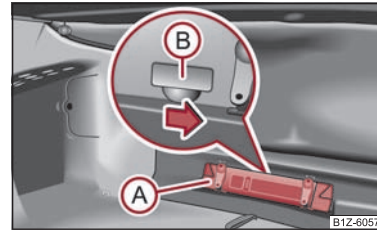


Fig. 28 Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

If there is a fault in the central locking, you can open the boot lid as follows:

- Fold the seat backrest forwards ⇒ page 54.
- Take out the warning triangle\* (A) ⇒ fig. 28.
- Press the operating lever in the direction of arrow in order to unlock the boot lid. The operating lever is located under the panel (B).
- Open the boot lid from the outside. ■

## Emergency unlocking of the boot lid (Combi)

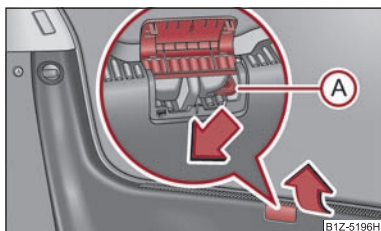


Fig. 29 Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

If there is a fault in the central locking, you can open the boot lid as follows:

- Fold the seat backrest forwards ⇒ page 54.
- Open up the cover of the lock upwards ⇒ fig. 29.
- Move the operating lever (A) with the aid of a narrow object e.g. screwdriver up to the stop in the direction of arrow; the boot lid is then unlocked.
- Open the boot lid from the outside. ■

## Remote control\*

### Description

You can use the remote control:

- to unlock and lock the car,
- unlocking boot lid,
- electrically open and close the windows.

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the car. The operating range of the remote control is approx. 10 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or if the receiver unit has been repaired or a new unit installed, it is then necessary for an authorised Škoda Service Partner to initialise the system. Only after this is it possible to again use the remote control.

### Note

- The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced, ideally by an authorised Škoda Service Partner, if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than 3 metres away.
- If the driver door is opened, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control. ■

## Unlocking and locking the vehicle

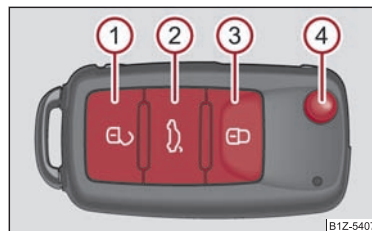


Fig. 30 Remote control key


### Unlocking the vehicle

- Press the button (1) ⇒ fig. 30 for about 1 second.

### Locking the vehicle

- Press button (3) for about 1 second.


## Deactivating safe securing system

- Press button  twice in 2 seconds. Further information ⇒ page 32.

## Boot lid remote release


- Press button  for about 2 second. Further information ⇒ page 35.

## Folding out of the key

- Press button .


## Folding up of the key

- Press button  and collapse the key bit in the housing.

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked. The vehicle will lock again automatically if you unlock the vehicle using button  but do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

## Display of the locking


The turn signal lights flash once to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked.


If the vehicle is locked by pressing the button  and some doors or the boot lid are not closed, the turn signal lights flash only after closing.

### WARNING

**If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the vehicle as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – hazard!**

### Note

- Operate the radio remote control only when the doors and boot lid are closed and you have visual contact with the vehicle.
- Once in the car, you must not press the lock button  of the radio remote control before inserting the key into the ignition lock in order to avoid the car being inadvertently

ently locked and the alarm system\* being switched on. Should this happen, press the unlock button  of the radio remote control. ■

## Synchronisation of the remote control

If the vehicle cannot be unlocked by actuating the remote control system then it is possible that the code in the key and the control unit in the vehicle are no longer synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the radio-operated key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery on the remote control was replaced.

This means it is necessary to synchronise the code as follows:

- Press any button on the remote control.
- pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute. ■

## Anti-theft alarm system\*

### Description

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle.

### How is the alarm system activated?

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically when the vehicle is locked with the key on the closed driver's door or by using the radio remote control. It is activated 30 seconds after locking the door.

### How is the alarm system deactivated?

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated if the vehicle is unlocked by only using the radio remote control. The vehicle is automatically locked again if the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after reactivating the anti-theft alarm system.

Once you unlock the vehicle by inserting the key into the driver door you then have to insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after ►

opening the door in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm will be triggered** if you do **not switch on** the ignition within 15 seconds.

### When is the alarm triggered?

The following security areas of the locked vehicle are monitored:

- Bonnet,
- Boot lid,
- Doors,
- Ignition lock,
- vehicle's angle of inclination ⇒ page 38, "Interior monitor\* and Towing protection monitoring\*",
- Vehicle interior ⇒ page 38, "Interior monitor\* and Towing protection monitoring\*",
- A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

### How is the alarm switched off?

You switch the alarm off if you unlock the vehicle with the radio remote control or if you switch the ignition on.



#### Note



- The working life of the alarm siren is 6 years. More detailed information is available by a specialist garage.
- Before leaving the vehicle, check that all the doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the anti-theft alarm system is fully operational.
- Coding of the radio remote control and the receiver unit precludes the use of the radio remote control from other vehicles. ■

## Interior monitor\* and Towing protection monitoring\*



Fig. 31 Button for interior monitor and towing protection monitoring

### Switch off the interior monitor and towing protection monitoring

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the driver door.
- Press the button  at the centre column on the driver side ⇒ fig. 31, the symbol  which lights up in the button changes from red to orange.
- Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring are switched on again automatically the next time the car is locked.



#### Note

- You can switch the interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring off if there is a possibility that movements from (e.g. children or animals) inside the vehicle interior or if the vehicle must be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed, might trigger the alarm.
- The opened storage compartment for spectacles reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. In order to ensure the function of the interior monitor to be fully operational, always close the storage compartment for spectacles before locking the vehicle. ■

## Power windows\*

### Buttons on the driver's door

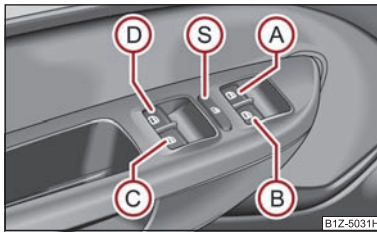


Fig. 32 Buttons on the driver's door

The power windows operate only when ignition is switched on.

#### Opening a window

- A window is opened by pressing lightly on the respective button in the door. The process stops when one releases the button.
- Additionally you can open the window automatically (fully opened) by pressing the button up to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

#### Closing a window

- A window is closed through pulling lightly on the respective button in the door. The closing process stops when one releases the button.
- Additionally you can close the window automatically (fully closed) by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The buttons for the individual windows are located in the armrest of the driver's door ⇒ fig. 32, front passenger door and in the rear doors\* ⇒ page 40.


#### Buttons for the power windows in the armrest for the driver

- Ⓐ Button for the power window in the driver's door

- Ⓑ Button for the power window in the front passenger's door
- Ⓒ Button for the power window in the rear door on the right\*
- Ⓓ Button for the power window in the rear door on the left\*
- Ⓢ Safety pushbutton\*

#### Safety pushbutton\*

You can deactivate the buttons for power windows at rear doors by pressing the safety pushbutton Ⓢ ⇒ fig. 32. The buttons for power windows at rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton Ⓢ again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the indicator light  in the safety switch Ⓢ lights up.

#### WARNING

- If you lock the vehicle from the outside, do not leave any person in the vehicle since it is no longer possible to open the windows from the inside in an emergency.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 40. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!
- It is recommended to deactivate the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors (safety pushbutton) Ⓢ ⇒ fig. 32 when children are being transported on the rear seats.

#### Note

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for a further 10 minutes. During this time the automatic closing and opening functions of the window will operate. The power windows are switched off completely once you open the driver or front passenger door.
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds. ■



## Button in front passenger door and in rear doors



Fig. 33 Position of button in front passenger door

A button for the relevant window is provided in these doors.

### Opening a window

- Lightly press the appropriate button **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
- Additionally you can open the window automatically (fully opened) by pressing the button **down** up to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

### Closing a window

- Lightly press the appropriate button **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
- Additionally you can close the window automatically (fully closed) by pressing the button **up** up to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

#### WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 40. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!

#### Note

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for a further 10 minutes. During this time the automatic closing and opening functions of the window will operate. The power windows are switched off completely once you open the driver or front passenger door.
- If the child safety lock is switched on, the lighting of the switch for the window lifter in the rear doors\* is not activated. ■

## Force limiter of the power windows

The electrically operated power windows are fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

You must try to close the window once again within 10 seconds after the window has gone down twice, even if the obstacle was not yet removed, the closing process is stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off, if you attempt to close the window within the next 10 seconds - **the window closes now with full strength!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

#### WARNING

You should take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window! ■

## Window convenience operation\*

You can open and close the window with power windows as follows when unlocking and locking the vehicle.

### Opening a window

- Hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the unlock position or press the unlock button of the radio remote control until all the windows are opened.

### Closing a window

- Hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position or press the lock button of the radio remote control until all the windows are closed.

You can interrupt the opening or closing operation of the windows immediately by releasing the key or the lock button.

#### WARNING

**The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 40. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!**

#### Note

On vehicles fitted with anti-theft alarm system the convenience window opening is possible by means of the key in the locking cylinder only 45 seconds after deactivating the warning system or after activating the anti-theft alarm system. ■

## Operational faults

### Electrically operated power windows do not operate

If the battery of the car has been disconnected and then reconnected, the electrically operated power windows do not operate. The system must be activated. Proceed as follows in order to re-establish the function:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the relevant switch **top** and hold it pressed as long as necessary until the window is closed.
- Release the switch.
- Press once again the relevant switch **top** and hold it pressed for approx. 3 seconds.

### Operation in winter

Ice accumulating on the surface of the windows during the winter may result in a greater resistance when closing the windows and the window may stop and go down several centimetres

It is necessary to put the force limiter out of operation in order to close the window ⇒ page 40, "Force limiter of the power windows".

#### WARNING

**The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 40. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window! ■**

## Lights and Visibility


### Lights

#### Switching lights on and off




Fig. 34 Dash panel: Light switch


#### Switching on side lights

- Turn the light switch into position .

#### Switching on the low beam and main beam

- Turn the light switch into position .
- Press the main beam lever forward in order to switch on the main beam  
⇒ page 44, fig. 38.

#### Switching off lights (except daylight driving lights)

- Turn the light switch into position .

Low beam comes on only if the ignition is switched on. After switching off the ignition, the low beam is switched off automatically and only the side lights come on.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering** the position of certain switches differs from that shown in ⇒ fig. 34. The symbols which mark the switch positions are identical, however.



#### WARNING

**Never drive with side lights on – risk of accident! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. In this case, always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.**



#### Note

- An audible warning will sound if you withdraw the ignition key and open the driver's door when the vehicle lights are still on.
- The acoustic warning signal is switched off over the door contact when the driver's door is closed (ignition off). The vehicle can be parked with the side lights on.
- If the car is parked for a lengthy period, we recommend switching off all lights, or leaving only the parking lights switched on.
- The switching on of the described lights should only be undertaken in accordance with the legal requirements.
- If a fault occurs in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically
- In the event of cool or humid weather conditions, the headlights can be misted up from inside.
  - The temperature difference between interior and external area of the headlight lenses is decisive.
  - When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period. The headlight lenses can possibly mist up at the border areas.
  - It also concerns reverse light and turn signal lights.
  - This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system. ■

#### “DAY LIGHT”\*

#### Switching on daylight driving lights

- Switch on the ignition without turning the light switch out of the position 0. ▶

### Deactivating the function daylight driving lights

- Pull the turn signal light lever towards the steering wheel up to 3 seconds after switching on the ignition and at the same time, slide it to the bottom and hold it in this position for at least 3 seconds.

### Activating the function daylight driving lights

- Pull the turn signal light lever towards the steering wheel up to 3 seconds after switching on the ignition and at the same time, slide it to the top and hold it in this position for at least 3 seconds.

The daytime driving light is a combination of low-beam and parking light (front and rear), including licence plate light.




When the daylight driving lights are switched on, the lighting of the instrument cluster is switched on as well. ■


### Fog lights\*



Fig. 35 Dash panel: Light switch




### Switching on the fog lights


- First of all turn the light switch into position  or  => fig. 35.
- Pull the light switch into position .

The rear fog light warning light  => page 22 lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog light is switched off. ■

### Rear fog light

#### Switching on the rear fog light

- First of all turn the light switch into position  or  => fig. 35.
- Pull the switch into position .

The rear fog light warning light  => page 22 lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog light is switched off.

Only the rear fog light of the trailer lights up automatically when you are towing a trailer using a **factory-fitted towing device** which is fitted with the rear fog light.

The rear fog light is located in the rear light array on the driver's side.

#### Caution

The rear fog light should only be switched on if visibility is particularly poor (conform with any varying legal provisions) to avoid dazzling vehicles behind your vehicle. ■

### Headlamp range adjustment

Once the low beam is switched on you can then adapt the range of the headlights to the load of the vehicle.



Fig. 36 Dash panel: Lights and Visibility

- Turn the control dial => fig. 36 until you have adjusted the low beam so that oncoming traffic is not dazzled. ▶

### Settings

The positions correspond approximately to the following vehicle loads:

- ① Front seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- ② All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- ③ All seats occupied, luggage compartment laden.
- ④ Driver seat occupied, luggage compartment laden.

### ! Caution

Set the headlight beam adjustment in such a way as to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. ■

### Switch for hazard warning lights ▲



Fig. 37 Dash panel: Switch for hazard warning lights

- Press switch ▲ ⇒ fig. 37 to switch the hazard warning light system on or off.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The indicator light for the turn signals and the indicator light in the switch also flash at the same time. You can also switch on the hazard warning light system if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system is switched on automatically if an airbag is deployed in the event of an accident.

Please comply with any legal requirements when using the hazard warning light system.

### i Note

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example:

- you encounter traffic congestion,
- your vehicle breaks down or an emergency situation occurs. ■

### The turn signal ⇄ and main beam lever ☰

The parking lights and headlight flasher are also switched on and off using the turn signal and main beam lever.

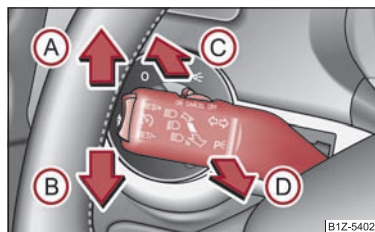


Fig. 38 Turn signal and main beam lever

The turn signal and main beam lever perform the following functions:

#### Right ⇄ and left ⇄ turn signal light


- Push the lever upwards (A) or downwards (B) ⇒ fig. 38.
- If you only wish to flash three times\* (the so-called convenience turn signal), push the lever briefly up to the upper pressure point and release it.
- Turn signal for changing lanes - in order to only flash briefly, move the lever up or down to the pressure point and hold it in this position.

#### Main beam ☰

- Switch on the low beam.
- Push the operating lever (in direction of arrow) (C) away from the steering wheel (spring-tensioned position). ▶

- Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (spring-tensioned position) in direction of arrow **D** - the main beam light goes off.



### Headlight flasher

- Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (spring-tensioned position) in direction of arrow **D** - the main beam and warning light  in the instrument cluster come on.

### Parking light **P**

- Switch off the ignition.
- Push the lever up or down - the right-hand or left-hand parking light is switched on.

### Information concerning the function of the lights.

- The **turn signal system** only operates when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding indicator light  or  in the instrument cluster also flashes.
- The turn signal is automatically cancelled after negotiating a curve.
- The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb of the turn signal light fails.
- The side light and rear light on the appropriate side of the vehicle are switched on when the **parking light** is selected. The parking light only operates if the ignition is switched off.

### **Caution**

Use main beam or the headlight flasher only if this does not risk dazzling other road users.

### **Note**

- If you have switched on the right or left turn signal light and you switch off the ignition, the parking light is not automatically switched on.
- Use only in accordance with the legal requirements the described lighting and signal systems. ■

## Interior lighting

### Lighting of the interior of the vehicle - Version 1

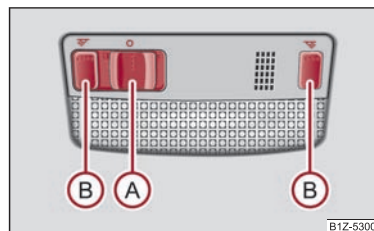



Fig. 39 Interior lighting with reading lights


### Switching on the interior lighting

- Press the switch **A** in the direction of the edge of the light, the symbol  => fig. 39 appears.

### Switching off the interior lighting


- Press the switch **A** into the middle position **O**.

### Operation of the lamp using the door switch


- Press the switch **A** in the direction of the centre of the light, the symbol  appears.

### Reading lights

- The reading lights are switched on or off with the switch **B**.

If the lights are controlled via the door switch (switch **A** in position ) the lighting is switched on when:

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Opening doors
- Withdrawing the ignition key. ▶

If the lights are controlled via the door switch (switch **A** in position ) , the lighting is switched off when:

- the vehicle is locked,
- the ignition is switched on.
- auto switch-off - about 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

If the doors remain open, the switch **A** in position , the interior lighting switches off automatically after around 10 minutes to stop the battery from running down.



### Note


We recommend having these bulbs replaced by a specialist garage. ■

## Vehicle interior lighting version 2



**Fig. 40 Interior lighting without reading lights**

### Switching on the interior lighting

- Turn the switch to position  ⇒ fig. 40.

### Switching off the interior lighting

- Turn the switch to position **O**.

### Operation of the lamp using the door switch

- Turn the switch to position .

The same principles apply for interior lighting version 2 as for ⇒ page 45, "Lighting of the interior of the vehicle - Version 1". ■

## Luggage compartment light


The lighting comes on automatically when the boot lid is opened. If the lid remains open for more than about 10 minutes, the luggage compartment lighting switches off automatically. ■

## Visibility

### Rear window heater



**Fig. 41 Switch for rear window heater**

- You can switch the rear window heater on or off by pressing the switch  ⇒ fig. 41 - the indicator light in the switch comes on or goes out.

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The rear window heater **switches off** automatically after 10 minutes.



### For the sake of the environment

As soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist, the heating should be switched off. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy ⇒ page 122, "Saving electricity".



### Note

- The position and the shape of the switch can differ depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle. ▶

- If the on-board voltage drops, the rear window heater is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control. ■

### Sun visors

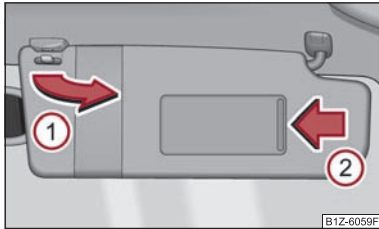


Fig. 42 Sun visor: swivelling out

You can pull the sun visor for the driver or front passenger out of the fixture and swivel it toward the door in the direction of the arrow ① ⇒ fig. 42.

A vanity mirror\*, which is provided with a cover, is located in the front passenger side sun visor. Push the cover in direction of arrow ②.

#### WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled to the side windows into the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed. ■

## Windshield wiper and wash system

### Windshield wiper

You can operate the windscreen wipers and automatic wipe/wash using the windscreen wiper lever.

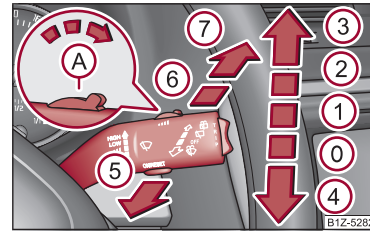


Fig. 43 Windscreen wiper lever

The windscreen wiper lever ⇒ fig. 43 has the following positions:

#### Finger-operated wiping

- If you wish to wipe the windscreen only **briefly**, push the lever into the sprung position ④. If you hold the lever in the lower position for more than 1 second, the wiper wipes faster.

#### Intermittent wiping

- Position the lever up into position ①.
- Set with the switch A the desired break between the individual wiper strokes

#### Slow wipe


- Position the lever up into position ②.

#### Fast wipe


- Position the lever up into position ③.





### Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen

- Pull the lever towards the steering wheel into sprung position , the wash system sprays immediately, the windscreen wiper starts wiping a little later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.
- Release the lever. The windscreen wash system stops and the wiper continues for another 3 - 4 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again\* 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.


### Wiping the rear window pane\*

- Push the lever away from the steering wheel into position  the windscreen wiper will operate every 6 seconds.

### Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window pane\*

- Press the lever from the steering wheel forward into the sprung position , the wash system sprays immediately, the windscreen wiper starts wiping a little later. As long as you hold the lever in this position, the wiper operates as well as the wash system.
- Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). **The lever will stay in position after releasing it .**

### Switching windscreen wipers off

- Move the lever back into its home position .

After the windscreen wiper switches off each time or the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wiper changes, this counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed <sup>4)</sup>.

<sup>4)</sup> On vehicles which do not have a contact switch for the bonnet, the windshield wiper and wash system operates also when the bonnet is opened.

If the intermittent wipe is switched on, the intervals are also controlled depending on speed.

The rear window will be wiped again if the front window wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

The windscreen washer nozzles are heated\* when the ignition is switched on.

Top up with wash liquid ⇒ page 150.

### Winter position

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily. You can set this rest position as follows:

- Switch on the windscreen wipers.
- Switch off the ignition. The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

You can also use the service position ⇒ page 49 as a winter position.

### WARNING

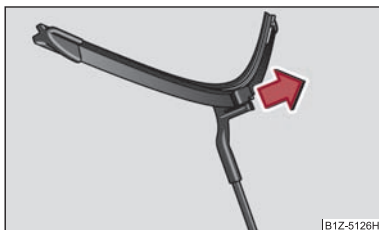
- **Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving ⇒ page 49.**
- **Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.**
- **The rain sensor only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.**

### Caution

In frosty weather, please first of all check whether the windscreen wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen before switching them on. Switching on windscreen wipers when the blades are frozen to the windscreen may result in damage both to the blades and the motor of the windscreen wipers!

**i Note**

- If the slower ② or the faster ③ wiper setting is switched on ⇒ page 47, fig. 43 and the vehicle speed decreases to below 4 km/h, the lower wiper step is switched on automatically. At a speed increase of more than 8 km/h the previous wiper setting is established again.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. If the obstacle continues to block the wiper, the wiper stops after 5 cycles, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the obstacle and switch on the wiper again. ■

**Replacing wiper blades for the windscreen wipers**

**Fig. 44 Wiper blade for the windscreen wiper**

One cannot fold out the wiper arms in the rest position from the windscreen. Before replacing the wiper arms you must put them into the service position.

**Service position for changing wiper blades**

- Close the bonnet.
- Switch the ignition on and then again off.
- Then press the windscreen wiper lever in the position ④ ⇒ page 47, fig. 43 within 20 seconds – the wiper arms move into the service position.

**Taking off the wiper blade**

- Fold windscreen wiper arm out from the windscreen and position the wiper blade at right angles to the wiper arm ⇒ ⚠.

- Take off the wiper blade in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 44 ⇒ ⚠.

**Attaching a wiper blade**

- Push the new wiper blade over the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade into the vertical position.
- Check whether the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arms onto the window and switch on the ignition. By pressing the window wiper lever into the sprung position ④ ⇒ fig. 44 or when driving at a speed greater than 4 km/h, the windscreen wiper arms move back into the rest position.

Wiper blades in proper condition are essential to obtain good visibility. Wiper blades should not be allowed to become dirtied by dust, insect remains and preserving wax.

Juddering or smearing of the wiper blades could then be due to wax residues left on the windscreen by vehicle washing in automatic vehicle wash systems. It is therefore important to **degrease** the lips of the wiper blades after every pass through an **automatic vehicle wash system**.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The ignition must not be switched on if the front windscreen wiper arms are folded out. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.**
- **If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.**
- **You should clean the wiper blades regularly with a windscreen cleaner in order to avoid any smears. Clean a wiper blade with a sponge or cloth if it is very dirty, for example from insect residues.**
- **Replace the wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be bought from an authorised Škoda Service Partner. ■**

## Replacing the wiper blade on the rear window wiper

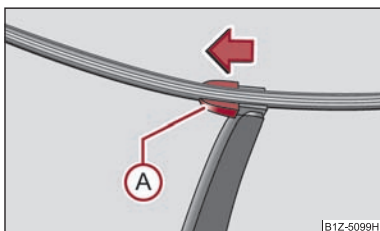


Fig. 45 Wiper blade for rear window

### Taking off the wiper blade

- Fold windscreen wiper arm out from the windscreen and position the wiper blade at right angles to the wiper arm ⇒ fig. 45.
- Hold the window wiper arm at the top end with one hand.
- With the other hand unlock the locking button (A) in the direction of arrow and remove the wiper blade.

### Attaching a wiper blade

- Position the wiper blade onto the wiper arm and lock the locking button (A).
- Check whether the wiper blade is correctly attached.

The same remarks apply here as for ⇒ page 49, “Replacing wiper blades for the windscreen wipers”. ■

## Rear-view mirror

### Manual dimming interior rear-view mirror

#### Basic setting

- Pull the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror forward.

#### Dimming mirror

- Pull the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror back. ■

### Exterior mirror

You can adjust the exterior mirrors electrically\*.

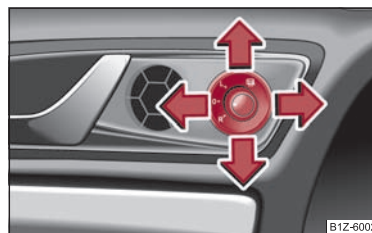




Fig. 46 Inner part of door: Rotary knob

The exterior mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +20 °C.


#### Heating of the external mirror

- Turn the rotary knob to position  ⇒ fig. 46.


#### Adjusting left and right exterior mirrors simultaneously

- Turn the rotary knob to position . The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

#### Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror

- Turn the rotary knob to position . The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

#### Switching off operating control

- Turn the rotary knob to position . ►

 **WARNING**

- **Convex (curved outward) or spherical (differently curved) exterior mirrors increase the vision field. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are only of limited use, therefore, for estimating distances to the following vehicles.**
- **Use whenever possible the interior rear mirror, for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.**

 **Note**

- Do not touch the surfaces of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- You can set the exterior mirrors by hand, if the power setting function fails at any time by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact your specialist garage if a fault exists with the power setting of the exterior mirrors. ■

## Seats and Stowage

### Front seats

#### Basic information

The front seats have a wide range of different settings and can thus be matched to the physical characteristics of the driver and front passenger. Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for:

- safely and quickly reaching the controls,
- a relaxed, fatigue-free body position,
- **achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

#### WARNING

- **Never transport more occupants than the maximum seating in the vehicle.**
- **Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened ⇒ page 103, "Transporting children safely" with a suitable restraint system.**
- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**
- **Keep your feet in the footwell at all times while driving. Never place your feet on the dash panel, out of the window or on the seats. This is particularly important for the front seat passenger. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!**
- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.**

#### WARNING (continued)

- **Ensure that there are no objects in the footwell as any objects may get behind the pedals during a driving or braking manoeuvre. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, to brake or accelerate. ■**

#### Adjusting the front seats



Fig. 47 Controls at seat

#### Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

- Pull the lever **1** ⇒ fig. 47 up and push the seat into the desired position.
- Release the lever **1** and push the seat further until the lock is heard to engage.

#### Adjusting height of seat\*

- Lift the seat if required by pulling or pumping lever **2** upwards.
- Lower the seat if required by pushing or pumping lever **2** downwards.

#### Adjust the angle of the seat backrest

- Relieve any pressure on the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the hand-wheel **3** ⇒ fig. 47 to adjust the desired angle of the backrest. ►

### Adjusting lumbar support\*

- Turn the wheel ④ until you have set the most comfortable curvature of the seat upholstery in the area of your spine.

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- **Only adjust the driver seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of injury!**
- **Take care when adjusting the seat! Adjusting the seat without care can lead to bruises or injuries.**
- **The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury! ■**

### Head restraints

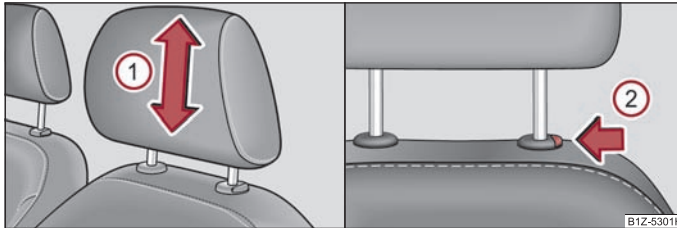


Fig. 48 Adjusting head restraint/pulling out

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

### Adjusting the height of a head restraint

- Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push the head restraint up or down in direction of arrow ① ⇒ fig. 48.
- Move the head restraint downwards if required by pressing the locking button with one hand in direction of arrow ② and by pressing with the other hand the head restraint downwards.

### Removing and installing a head restraint

- Pull the head restraint up out of the seat backrest as far as the stop (on the rear head restraints fold forward the seat backrest).
- Press the locking button in the direction of arrow ② ⇒ fig. 48 and pull the head restraint out.
- To re-insert the head restraint, push it down into the seat backrest far enough until you hear the locking button engage.

The position of the front and rear outer head restraints is adjustable in height. The middle rear head restraint\* is adjustable in two positions.

The head restraints must be adjusted to match the size of the seat occupant. Correctly adjusted head restraints together with the seat belts offer effective protection for the occupants ⇒ page 86, "Correct seated position".

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- **The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.**
- **Do not drive under any circumstance with removed head restraints – risk of injury!**
- **If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position. ■**

## Middle rear head restraint\*

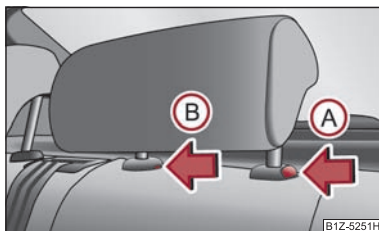


Fig. 49 Rear seats: middle head restraint

In certain countries national legal provisions also require the equipment of the rear seat with fixing eyes for child seat using the "Top Tether" system ⇒ page 109. For vehicles, which are equipped with such fixing eyes, a deviating sequence for removing the middle head restraint must be observed.

### Removing and installing the rear middle head restraint

- Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
- Press the locking button in the direction of arrow (A), press simultaneously the locking button into the opening (B) using a flat screwdriver with a width of maximum 5 mm and pull out the head restraint ⇒ fig. 49.
- To re-insert the head restraint, push it down into the seat backrest far enough until you hear the locking button engage.

### WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Do not drive under any circumstance with removed head restraints – risk of injury!
- If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position. ■

## Rear seats

### Folding the rear seats forwards

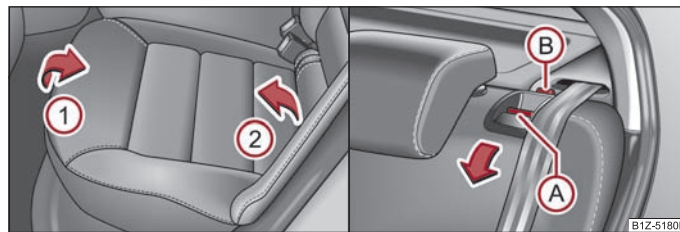


Fig. 50 Fold the seat cushion forwards/unlock the seat backrest

To enlarge the luggage compartment, the rear seats can be folded forwards, if necessary remove the seat cushions. The rear seats can be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats\*.

### Folding seats forwards

- Before folding the rear seats forwards, you must adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged when the rear seats are folded forwards.
- Pull up the seat cushion in direction of arrow (1) and fold forwards in direction of arrow (2) ⇒ fig. 50.
- Press the unlocking knob (A) and fold the seat backrest forwards.

If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they cannot be damaged or soiled. Observe the guidelines ⇒ page 57, "luggage compartment". ■

## Move seats into the initial position

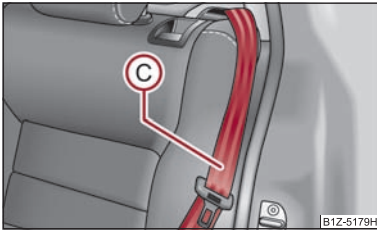


Fig. 51 Lock the seat backrest

## Move seats into the initial position

- Install the head restraint in the slightly lifted seat backrest.
- Place the rear lateral seat belt (C) behind the edge of the side trim panel ⇒ fig. 51.
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- Make sure that the red pin (B) is covered ⇒ page 54, fig. 50.
- Move the seat cushion into its original position.

### WARNING

- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and the seat backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide forwards if there is sudden braking - risk of injury!
- Pay attention that the seat backrests are correctly interlocked. It is only then that the three-point seat belt for the middle seat can reliably fulfil its function.
- Before folding the seat backrest back into the secure position, place the rear lateral seat belt behind the edge of the side trim panel. Take suitable measures to prevent that the seat belt is jammed between the seat backrest and the side trim panel and is thus damaged. ■

## Removing the seat cushion

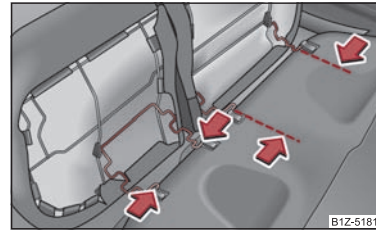


Fig. 52 Removing seat cushions

You can enlarge the luggage compartment on vehicles with divided rear seats\* by removing the rear seat.

## Removing

- Fold the seat cushion forwards completely.
- Press the wire clamps in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 52 and remove the seat cushion from its holder.

## Installing

- Press the wire clamps in the direction of the arrow and place it in its holder.
- Fold the seat cushion back into its original position. ■

## Rear seat armrest\*

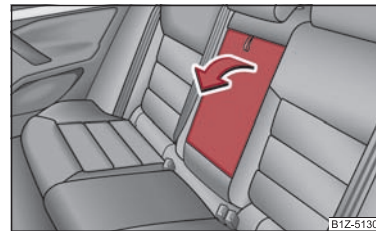


Fig. 53 Rear seats: Armrest




- You can fold down the armrest at the loop to enhance occupant comfort  
⇒ page 55, fig. 53. ■

### Seat heaters\*



Fig. 54 Dash panel: Regulator for front seat heating

You can electrically heat the seat cushions and the seat backrests of the front seats.

- You can switch on and regulate the seat heating of the driver or front passenger seat by pressing the surface of the regulator at the point at which the symbol is located  ⇒ fig. 54.
- With one press, you can switch the heating to highest intensity which is indicated by the lighting up of the three warning lights in the switch.
- With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The intensity of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

#### WARNING

If you or the passenger have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating at all. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that in specific cases as mentioned above the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

#### Caution

- You should not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply pressure at specific points in order to avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heaters.
- Do not use the seat heating if the seats are not occupied by persons or if objects are fastened or stored on them, for example a child seat, a bag etc. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- Do not clean the seats moist ⇒ page 134.

#### Note

- The seat heating should only be switched on when the engine is running. This has a significant effect of saving on the battery capacity.
- If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control. ■

### Pedals

Concerning a secure depressing of the pedal, you should use only footmats from the Škoda genuine accessories.

#### Operation of the pedals must not be hindered!

#### WARNING

- **Greater pedal distances may be needed when there is a fault in the brake system.**
- **Do not place any footmats or other additional floor coverings in the area of the pedals in order to ensure that all the pedals can be fully depressed and are able to return unobstructed to their initial position – risk of accident!**
- **There must be no objects on the floor which could roll under the pedals. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident! ■**

## Luggage compartment

### Loading the luggage compartment

Please observe the following in the interest of having good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- Distribute the items of luggage as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or the fixing net\* ⇒ page 58.

In the event of an accident, there is such a high kinetic energy which is produced by small and light objects that they can cause severe injuries. The magnitude of the kinetic energy depends on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the object. The speed at which the vehicle is travelling is in this case the more significant factor.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an unsecured object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg. You can imagine the injuries that can occur, if this "bullet" is flying through the interior compartment and hits an occupant.

#### WARNING

- **Stow the objects in the luggage compartment and attach them to the lashing eyes.**
- **Loose objects in the passenger compartment can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other oncoming traffic. This risk is still increased, if the objects which are flying around are hit by a deployed airbag. In this case, the objects which are thrown back can injure the occupants – hazard.**
- **Please note that the handling properties of your vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.**

#### WARNING (continued)

- **The items carried in the luggage compartment should be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if there are any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres undertaken – risk of injury!**
- **Never drive with the boot lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!**
- **On no account exceed the permissible axle loads and the permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!**
- **Never transport occupants in the luggage compartment!**

#### Caution

Please ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects sliding in this area.

#### Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load ⇒ page 151. ■

### Vehicles of category N1

On vehicles of the category N1, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a binding device which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for transporting the goods. ■

## Lashing eyes

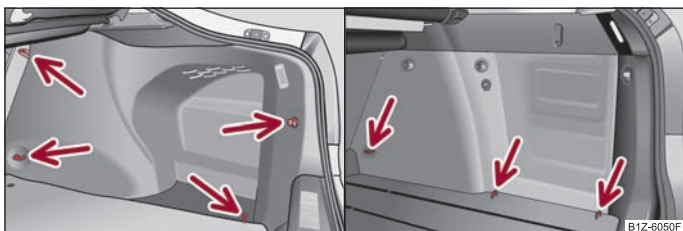


Fig. 55 Luggage compartment: Lashing eyes Octavia/Combi

Eyes are located on the sides of the luggage compartment for lashing the goods to be loaded.

You can also attach a floor fixing net\* to these eyes for lashing small objects.

The floor fixing net\* together with the installation instruction are stowed under the floor covering of the luggage compartment.

### WARNING

- The load to be transported must be fixed in place in such a way that it cannot move during the journey and when braking.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. In order to prevent the items of luggage being thrown forward, always use suitable lashing straps which are firmly attached to the lashing eyes.

### Note

On vehicles in the version Octavia, the top front lashing eyes are located behind the seat backrest → page 58, fig. 55 - left. ■

## Fixing nets - Net programme Octavia\*

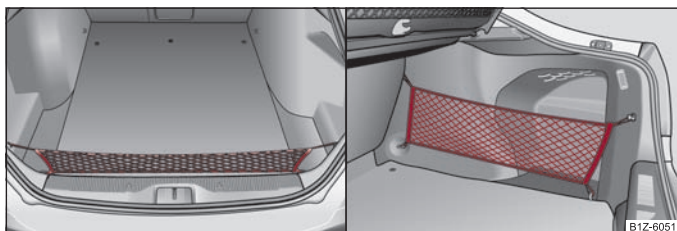


Fig. 56 Fixing net: Horizontal pocket/vertical pocket

Fixing examples of the fixing net as a horizontal pocket → fig. 56 - left and a vertical pocket → fig. 56 - right.

The floor fixing net is stowed under the floor covering of the luggage compartment.

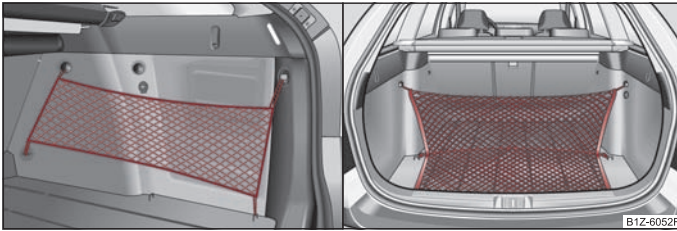
### WARNING

The whole strength of the net makes it possible to load the pocket with objects of up to 1.5 kg in weight. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently - risk of injury and net damage!

### Caution

Do not place any objects with sharp edges in the nets - risk of net damage. ■

## Fixing nets - Net programme Combi\*



**Fig. 57** Fixing net: Vertical pocket/division of the luggage compartment

Fixing examples of the fixing net as pocket ⇒ fig. 57 - left and as division of the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 57 -right.

The floor fixing net is stowed under the floor covering of the luggage compartment.

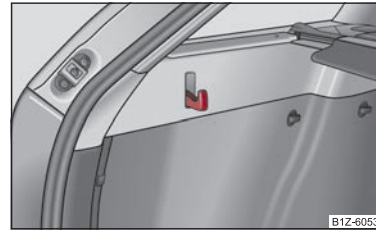
### **WARNING**

The whole strength of the net makes it possible to load the pocket with objects of up to 1.5 kg in weight. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently - risk of injury and net damage!

### **Caution**

Do not place any objects with sharp edges in the nets - risk of net damage. ■

## Folding hooks (Combi)

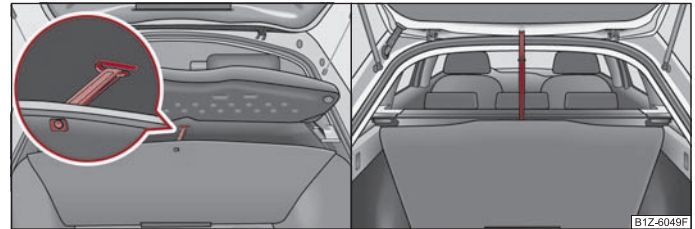


**Fig. 58** Luggage compartment: folding hooks

Folding hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 58.

An item of luggage weighing up to 10 kg can be attached to the hook. ■

## Fixing floor covering of the luggage compartment



**Fig. 59** Luggage compartment: Fixing of the floor covering Octavia/Combi

There is a loop (Octavia) or there are hooks (Combi) located on the floor covering of the luggage compartment. You can fix the raised floor cover with a hook to the luggage compartment cover (Octavia) ⇒ fig. 59 - left, as if one needs to reach the spare wheel or to the frame of the boot lid (Combi) ⇒ fig. 59 - right. ■

### Luggage compartment cover (Octavia)

You can use the luggage compartment cover behind the head restraints for storing light and soft items.

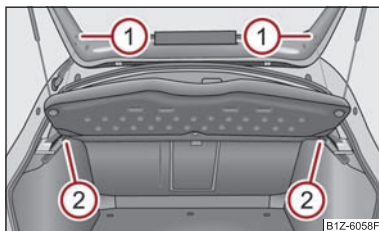


Fig. 60 Removing the luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover can be removed as required if one must transport bulky goods.

- Unhook the support straps on the boot lid ① ⇒ fig. 60.
- Place the cover in the horizontal position.
- Pull the cover out of the holder ② horizontally to the rear.
- Install again by pushing the luggage compartment cover forwards into the holder ② and hanging the support straps ① on the boot lid.

You can stow the removed luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrest.

#### WARNING

**No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.**

#### Caution

Please ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.

#### Note

Opening the tailgate also lifts up the luggage compartment cover. ■

### Foldable luggage compartment cover (Combi)

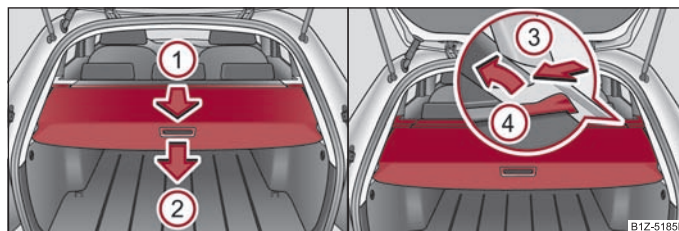


Fig. 61 Luggage compartment: Foldable luggage compartment cover/removing the foldable luggage compartment cover

#### Pulling out

- Pull the foldable luggage compartment cover in direction of arrow ① as far as the stop into the secured position ⇒ fig. 61.

#### Folding

- Press the cover in the handle area in direction of arrow ②, the cover rolls up automatically.

#### Removing

- Have the foldable luggage compartment cover removed to transport bulky goods by pressing on the side of the cross rod in direction of arrow ③ and taking it out by moving it in direction of arrow ④.

#### WARNING

**No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover. ■**

## Net partition\* (Combi)

### Use the net partition behind the rear seats

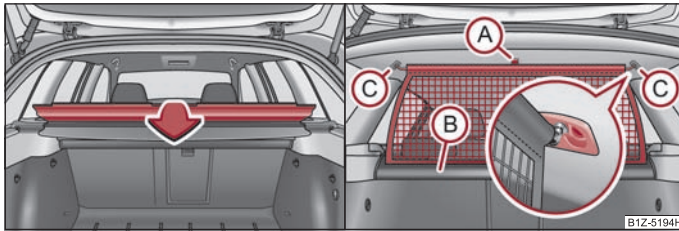


Fig. 62 Folding down the storage compartment cover/pulling out the net partition

#### Pulling out

- Fold down the storage compartment cover behind the rear seats ⇒ fig. 62 - left.
- Pull the net partition at the bracket (A) out of the housing (B) in direction of the holders (C).
- Insert the cross rod into one of the mounts (C) and push the cross rod forwards.
- In the same way, fix the cross rod to the other side of the vehicle, mount (C).
- Fold the storage compartment cover downwards.

#### Folding

- Fold down the storage compartment cover behind the rear seats ⇒ fig. 62.
- Pull the cross rod back slightly, first on the one side then on the other side and take the cross rod out of the mounts (C).
- **Hold** the cross rod in such a way that the net partition can roll up slowly and without damage into housing (B).
- Fold the storage compartment cover downwards.

If you wish to use the entire luggage compartment, you can remove the luggage compartment cover ⇒ fig. 61.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- First check for yourself that the cross rod is inserted into the mounts (C) in the front position!
- Pay attention that the rear seat backrest is correctly interlocked. It is only then that the three-point seat belt for the middle seat can reliably fulfil its function. ■

### Using the net partition behind the front seats

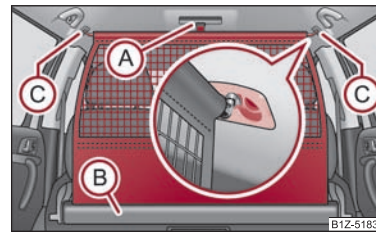


Fig. 63 Pull out the net partition


#### Pulling out

- Fold the rear seats forwards ⇒ page 54
- Pull the net partition net at the plate (A) out of the housing (B) ⇒ fig. 63.
- Insert the cross rod into the mount (C) first on the one side and push the cross rod forwards.
- In the same way, fix the cross rod to the other side of the vehicle, mount (C).

#### Folding

- Pull the cross rod back slightly, first on the one side then on the other side and take the cross rod out of the mounts (C) ⇒ fig. 63.
- **Hold** the cross rod in such a way that the net partition can roll up slowly and without damage into housing (B).
- Fold the rear seats back into their original position.

### WARNING

- The belt locks and the belts must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide forwards if there is sudden braking – risk of injury!
- Pay attention that the rear seat backrest is correctly interlocked. It is only then that the three-point seat belt for the middle seat can reliably fulfil its function.
- First check for yourself that the cross road is inserted into the mounts  in the front position! ■

## Removing and installing net partition housing

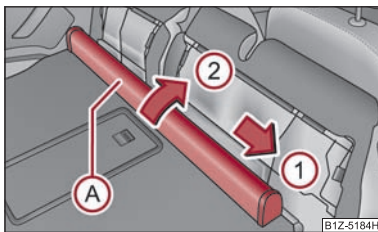






Fig. 64 Rear seats: Net partition housing

### Removing

- Fold the rear seats forwards ⇒ page 54
- Open the right rear door.
- Push the net partition housing  ⇒ fig. 64 in the direction of arrow  and take it out of the mount of the rear seats in the direction of arrow .

### Installing

- Position the net partition housing into the mounts of the rear seat backrests.

- Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of arrow  as far as the stop.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original position. ■

## The roof rack\*

### Description

Pay attention to the following points if you wish to transport luggage or other items on the roof of your vehicle:

- A special roof luggage rack system was developed for the vehicle, that is why you should only use a roof luggage rack which has been released for use by Škoda Auto.
- The base carrier is the basis for a complete roof luggage rack system. Separate additional holders are required for safety reasons for transporting luggage, bikes, surfboards, skis and boats.
- The basic version of the roof luggage rack system and further components are obtainable as accessories from the authorised Škoda Service Partners.

### Caution

- If you use other roof rack systems or if the roof bars are not properly fitted, then any damage which may result to your car is not covered by the warranty agreements. It is therefore essential to pay attention to the fitting instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the opened sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the opened boot lid does not collide with the roof load.

### For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption. One should therefore take off the roof bar system after use. ►

**i Note**

A roof rail is obtainable from a specialist garage if hasn't been fitted onto an estate car at the works, which carries out the professional fitting. ■

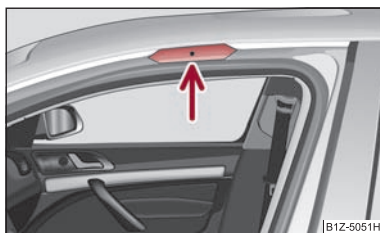
**Lashing points (Octavia)**

Fig. 65 Attachment points for base roof carrier

Perform the assembly and the disassembly according to the attached instructions.

**i Note**

- If you have any questions, please contact a specialist garage.
- The figure is not valid for an estate car. ■

**Roof load**

Distribute weight evenly over the roof luggage rack system. The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

You cannot make full use of the permissible roof load if you use a roof luggage rack system with a lower load carrying capacity. The load transported on the roof luggage rack system must not exceed the weight limit which is stated in the fitting instructions.

**! WARNING**

- The items which you transport on the roof bar system must be reliably attached - risk of accident!

**! WARNING (continued)**

- You must on no account exceed the permissible roof load, the permissible axle loads and the permissible gross weight of your vehicle - risk of accident!
- Please note that the handling properties of your vehicle change when you transport heavy or bulky items on the roof bar system as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity and the increased wind attack area - risk of accident! You must absolutely adapt your style of driving and the speed of the vehicle to the specific circumstances. ■

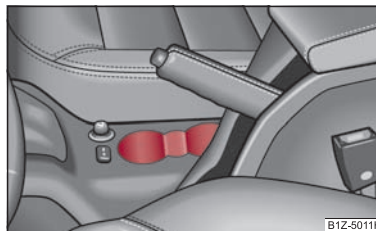
**Cup holder****Cup holder in front centre console**

Fig. 66 Front centre console: Cup holder

You can place two cups or beverage cans into the recesses ⇒ fig. 66.

**! WARNING**

- Do not place any hot beverages into the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, the hot beverages may spill - risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). You might be injured by them in the event of an accident. ▶



### ⚠ Caution

Do not open the beverages in the cup holder while driving. They may spill when braking and while doing so damage the vehicle. ■

## Note holder

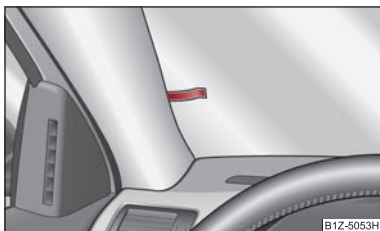


Fig. 67 Windscreen: Note holder

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching a car park ticket in parking areas.

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision. ■

## Ashtray\*

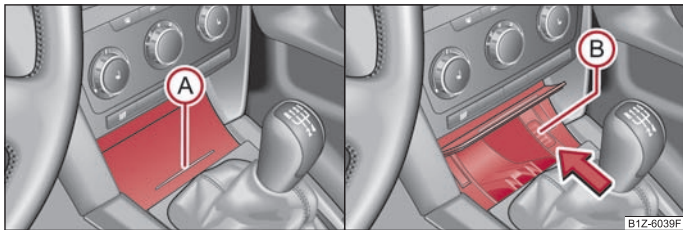


Fig. 68 Centre console: Removing ashtray/ashtray insert

### Opening ashtray

- Press on the bottom part of the cover of the ashtray - refer to (A) ⇒ fig. 68.

### Removing ashtray insert

- Press on the ashtray insert in the area (B) (the insert comes out) and you can take it out.

### Insert ashtray insert

- Insert the ashtray insert into the mount and press it in.

### ⚠ WARNING

Never lay flammable objects in the ashtray basin - risk of fire! ■

## Cigarette lighter\*, power sockets

### Cigarette lighter

*You can also use the socket on the cigarette lighter for other electrical appliances.*



Fig. 69 Centre console: Cigarette lighter

### Using the cigarette lighter

- Press in the button of the cigarette lighter ⇒ fig. 69.
- Wait until the button jumps forward.

- Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use it.
- Insert the cigarette lighter again into the socket.

**Using the socket**

- Remove the cigarette lighter or the cover of the power socket.
- Connect the plug of the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 12 volt power socket can also be used to supply power to additional electrical accessories with a power uptake up to 120 watts.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Not paying proper attention or incorrect use of the cigarette lighter in an uncontrolled manner may result in burns.**
- **The cigarette lighter and the power socket also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. You should therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.**

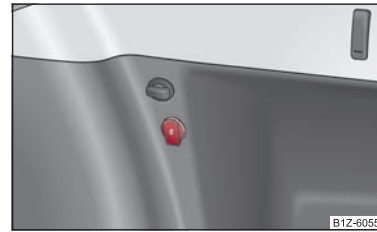
**⚠ Caution**

Always use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power socket.

**ℹ Note**

- **Connecting electrical components when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle - risk of battery draining!**
- Further information ⇒ page 157, "Accessories, changing and replacing parts". ■

**Power socket in the luggage compartment (Combi)**



**Fig. 70 Luggage compartment: Power socket**

- Open the cover of the power socket ⇒ fig. 70.
- Connect the plug of the electrical appliance to the socket.

You can only use the power socket for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a power uptake up to 120 watts. The vehicle battery will be discharged in the process if the engine is stationary.

The same remarks apply here as for ⇒ page 64, "Cigarette lighter\*, power sockets".

Further information ⇒ page 157, "Accessories, changing and replacing parts". ■

**Storage compartments**

**Overview**

You will find the following storage facilities in your vehicle:

Storage compartment on the front passenger side	⇒ page 66
Storage compartment on the driver's side	⇒ page 66
Storage compartment on the dash panel	⇒ page 66
Storage compartment in front centre console*	⇒ page 67
Storage compartment in the front doors	⇒ page 67

Front seat armrest with storage compartment*	⇒ page 67
Rear armrest with storage compartment*	⇒ page 68
Storage compartment in rear centre console*	⇒ page 68
Seat backrest with opening for skis*	⇒ page 69
Clothes hooks*	⇒ page 69

### WARNING

- Please do not place anything on top of the dash panel. Such objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic situation - risk of accident!
- Ensure that when driving no objects from the centre console or from other storage possibilities may get into the footwell of the driver. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator - risk of accident! ■

## Storage compartment on the front passenger side

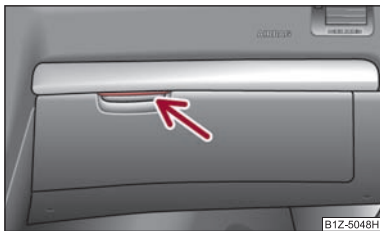


Fig. 71 Dash panel: Storage compartment on the front passenger side

### Opening and closing the storage compartment on the front passenger side

- Press the handle of the lid ⇒ fig. 71 - the lid folds down.
- Raise the lid and press it until the catch is heard to engage.

There is a holder for a pen and note book on the inside of the lid.

### WARNING

- The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.
- Do not place any beverages into the cup holder while driving. Spilled beverages can damage the electrical system and the upholstery. Hot beverages may result in burns. ■

## Storage compartment on the driver's side



Fig. 72 Dash panel: Storage compartment on the driver's side

- The storage compartment is opened by lifting the handle and folding open in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 72.

### WARNING

- The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons. ■

## Storage compartment on the dash panel

The storage compartment on the dash panel with a cover. ▶

### WARNING

- The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!
- Do not put any highly inflammable objects or objects which are sensitive to heat (e.g. lighters, sprays, spectacles, carbonated drinks) in the storage compartment.
- During the journey, no objects must be in the storage compartment. In the event of a vehicle collision these objects could be thrown out of the compartment – risk of injuries! ■

## Storage compartment in front centre console\*

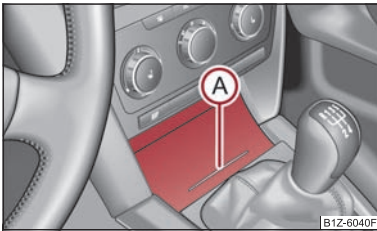


Fig. 73 Front centre console: Storage compartment

- Press on the bottom part of the storage compartment in the area **(A)** ⇒ fig. 73 – the lid opens.

### WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire! ■

## Storage compartment in the front doors

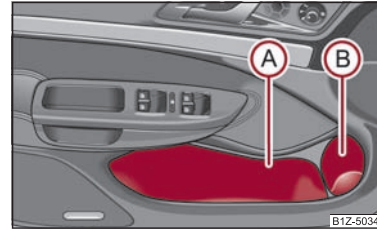


Fig. 74 Storage compartment in the front doors

A bottle holder is located in the area **(B)** of the storage compartment for the front doors.

### WARNING

Use the area **(A)** ⇒ page 67, fig. 74 of the storage compartment only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired. ■

## Front seat armrest with storage compartment\*

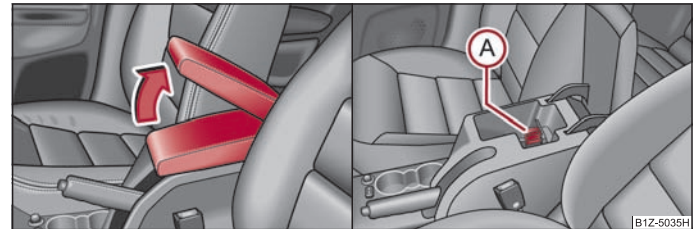


Fig. 75 Armrest: Storage compartment/cooling of storage compartment

The armrest is adjustable for height and length. ▶

### Opening storage compartment

- Open the lid of the armrest in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 75 - left.

### Closing storage compartment

- Open the lid up to the stop, then you can fold it downwards.

### Setting height

- First of all fold the lid to the bottom and lift it in the direction of arrow into one of the 4 fixed positions.

### Adjusting in forward/back direction

- Push the lid into the desired position.

### Opening air inlet


- Pull the lock (A) in upward direction.

### Closing air inlet

- Push the lock (A) as far as the stop downwards.

On vehicles fitted with air conditioning, the storage compartment is equipped with a lockable inlet for thermally treated (warmed-up) air.

At open air supply, air flows into the storage with a temperature which is as high as the one out of the air outlet nozzles, depending on temperature setting.

The air inlet in the storage compartment is connected to position  through adjustment of the control dial for air distribution. This position causes the maximum amount of air to flow into the storage compartment (depending on the rotary regulator position for the fan).

You can use the storage compartment, for example, to temper drinks cans, etc.

**If you do not use the air inlet in the storage compartment, the end cover should always be kept closed.**



#### Note

Push the lid of the armrest up to stop to the rear before operating the handbrake. ■

## Rear seat armrest with storage compartment\*

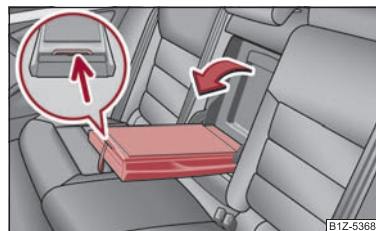


Fig. 76 Armrest of rear seats:

A storage compartment\* is located in the armrest. You open the compartment by pressing the button on the front side and raising the cover ⇒ page 68, fig. 76. ■

## Storage compartment in rear centre console\*

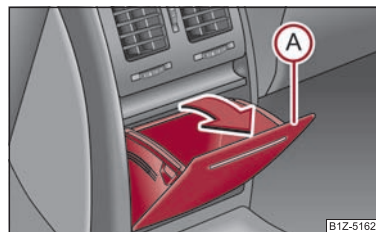


Fig. 77 Centre console at rear: Storage compartment

The storage compartment is equipped with a removable insert.

- Open the storage compartment by pulling on the upper edge of the storage compartment (A) in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 77.



#### WARNING

**The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes - risk of fire! ■**

## Seat backrest with opening for skis\*

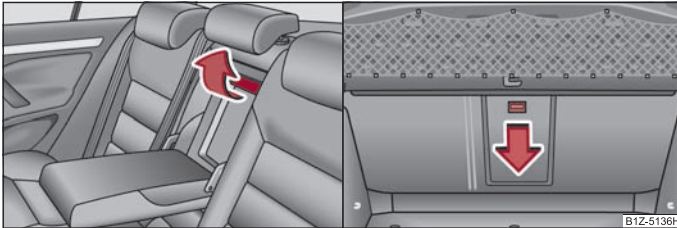


Fig. 78 Rear seats: Cover handle/luggage compartment: Unlock button

After folding open the armrest and the lid, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which you can push long objects e.g. skis etc. You can fold open the armrest and the lid from the passenger or luggage compartment.

### Opening from passenger compartment

- Pull down the armrest of the rear seat at the loop ⇒ page 55.
- Pull the handle up to the stop in upward direction and fold open the lid downwards ⇒ fig. 78 - left.

### Opening from luggage compartment

- Push the unlock button downwards ⇒ fig. 78 - right and fold the lid (with armrest) to the front.

### Closing

- Fold the cover and the arm rest upwards as far as the stop. The cover must click into place audibly.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. You can recognise this on the fact that the red field above the unlocking button of the luggage compartment is not visible. ■

## Clothes hooks\*

The clothes hooks are located on the middle pillar and on the handle in the headliner above each of the rear doors.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.
- Use the hooks for hanging only light items of clothing and ensure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this will interfere with the protection offered by the head airbag\*. ■

## Heating and air conditioning system

### Air outlet vents

The information provided is valid for all vehicles.

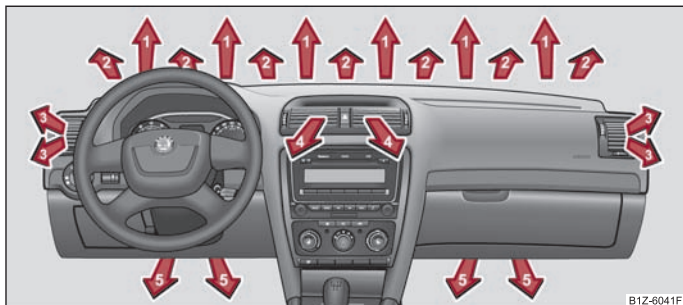


Fig. 79 Air vents at the front

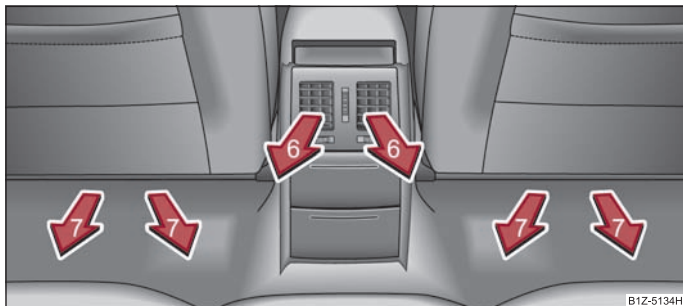


Fig. 80 Air vents at the rear

### Open air outlet vents

- Turn the vertical thumbwheel (not when in the end position).

### Close air outlet vents

- Turn the vertical thumbwheel into the end position.

### Redirecting air flow

- Swivel upward or downward the grille of the vents in order to set the height of the air flow using the vertically arranged thumbwheel.
- Turn the horizontal thumbwheel on the vent to the right or left in order to change the air flow to the appropriate side.

The air outlet vents **3**, **4** → fig. 79 and **6** → fig. 80 can be closed and opened individually.

The air outlet vents **6** are only fitted on vehicles with higher centre console.

Warmed, unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the air outlet vents according to the setting of the regulator of the heating or the air conditioning system\* and the atmospheric conditions.

### Note

The air outlet vents **2** ensure in the ventilation and cooling mode for a comfortable (no-draught) ventilation of the interior of the vehicle, also if the air outlet vents **4** are closed. ■

## Heating

### Using the system

The heating system delivers air into the interior of the vehicle and warms it as required.

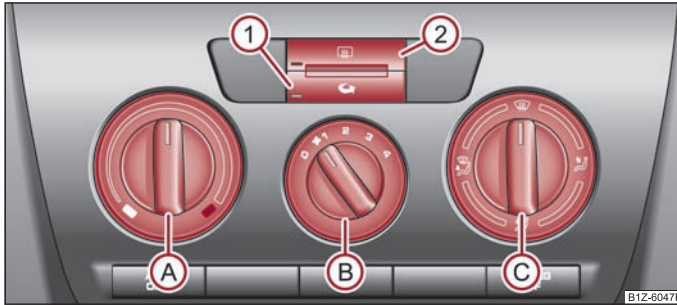


Fig. 81 Heating: Control elements

### Setting temperature

- Turn the control dial (A) ⇒ fig. 81 to the right in order to increase the temperature.
- Turn the control dial (A) to the left in order to decrease the temperature.

### Controlling blower

- Turn the blower switch (B) into one of the positions, 1 to 4, in order to switch the blower on.
- Turn the blower switch (B) into position 0 in order to switch the blower off.
- If you wish to shut off the fresh air supply, use the button (1) - recirculated air mode ⇒ ⚠.

### Control for air distribution

- You can adjust the direction of the air flow using the air distribution control (C) ⇒ page 70.

### Rear window heater

- Press button (2). Further information ⇒ page 46, “Rear window heater”.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and ventilation systems operate properly.

The heating effect depends on the coolant temperature. The full heating effect does not kick in until the engine is run in.

The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

### ⚠ WARNING

You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as “stale” air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.


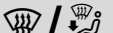



### ℹ Note

- The whole heat output will be needed to unfrost the windscreen and side windows. No warm air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment. ■



## Set heating

Recommended settings of heating controls for:


Setup	Setting of the control dial			Button ①	Air outlet vents 3	Air outlet vents 4
	Ⓐ	Ⓑ	Ⓒ			
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window	Closing
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2 or 3		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window	Closing
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		briefly switched on	Opening	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3		Do not switch on	Opening	Closing
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Do not switch on	Opening	Opening

## Recirculated air mode


*In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.*




Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

### Switching recirculated air mode on

- Press the button . The warning light in the button  $\Rightarrow$  page 71, fig. 81 goes out.

### Switching recirculated air mode off

- Once again press the button . The warning light in the button goes out.

The recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control  is in position   $\Rightarrow$  page 71, fig. 81. You can also switch recirculated air mode on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing pushbutton .

#### WARNING

**You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as “stale” air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up. ■**



## Climatic\*

### Description

*The Climatic is a combined cooling and heating system. It makes it possible to optimally control the air temperature at any season of the year.*

#### Description of the Climatic


It is important for your safety and for your driving comfort that the Climatic is operating properly.

The cooling only operates if button   $\Rightarrow$  fig. 82  is pressed, and the following conditions are met:

- engine running,
- outside temperature above approx. +2 °C and
- blower switch switched on (positions 1 to 4).

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The wellbeing of the occupants of the car is enhanced as a result of this particularly at high outside temperatures and a high air humidity. The system prevents the windows misting up during the cold season of the year.

The heating effect depends on the coolant temperature. The full heating effect does not kick in until the engine is run in.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode in order to enhance the cooling effect  $\Rightarrow$  .

Air at a temperature of about 5 °C may flow out of the vents under certain circumstances when the cooling system is operating. Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents and large differences in temperature, for example when getting out of the vehicle, can result in chills in sensitive persons.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and cooling systems operate properly.

After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is quite normal and not an indication of a leak!

#### WARNING

- **For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.**
- **You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as “stale” air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.**

### Note

- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor). ■

## Using the system

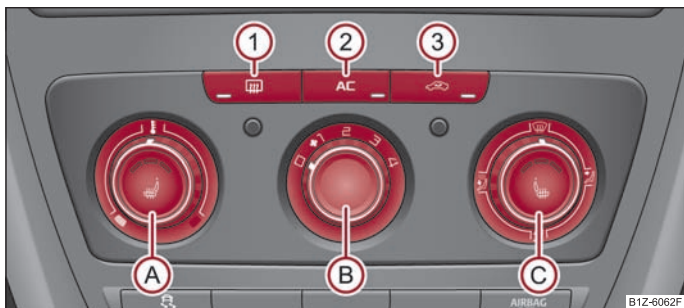


Fig. 82 Climatic: Control elements

### Setting temperature

- Turn the control dial (A) ⇒ fig. 82 to the right in order to increase the temperature.
- Turn the control dial (A) to the left in order to decrease the temperature.

### Controlling blower

- Turn the blower switch (B) into one of the positions, 1 to 4, in order to switch the blower on.
- Turn the blower switch (B) into position 0 in order to switch the blower off.
- If you wish to shut off the fresh air supply, use the button (3) - recirculated air mode ⇒ page 76. ■

### Control for air distribution

- You can adjust the direction of the air flow using the air distribution control (C) ⇒ page 70.

### switching cooling on and off

- Press the button (AC) (2) ⇒ page 74, fig. 82. The warning light lights up in the button.
- When you again press the switch (AC), the cooling system is switched off. The warning light in the button goes out.

### Rear window heater








- Press button (1). Further information ⇒ page 46, "Rear window heater".

### Note

- The whole heat output will be needed to unfrost the windscreen and side windows. No warm air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment.
- If the cooling system has not been switched on for a lengthy period, odours may be produced at the evaporator because of deposits. Switch the cooling system on at least once a month for approximately 5 minutes at the highest blower stage - also during the cold season of the year - in order to remove such odours. Also open a window for a short time.
- Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode ⇒ page 76. ■

## Set Climatic

Recommended settings of Climatic controls for the respective operating modes:

Setup	Setting of the control dial			Button		Air outlet vents 3
	A	B	C	2	3	
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Switched off	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2 or 3		switched on	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Switched off	briefly switched on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening
the fastest cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		switched on	briefly switched on	Opening
optimal cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		switched on	Do not switch on	open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening

## Recirculated air mode


*In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.*




Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

### Switching recirculated air mode on

- Press the button   ⇒ page 74, fig. 82 the warning light lights up in the button.

### Switching recirculated air mode off

- Once again press the button . The warning light in the button goes out.

The recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control  is in position  ⇒ page 74, fig. 82. You can also switch recirculated air mode on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing pushbutton .



#### WARNING

**You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as “stale” air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up. ■**

## Using the air conditioning system economically

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on while travelling when the window is open.

The desired interior temperature can also be achieved without switching in the cooling system just by switching to fresh air mode.



### For the sake of the environment

When you economize on fuel, you also reduce pollutant emissions. ■

## Operational malfunctions

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be:

- The fuse on the air conditioning system has blown. Check the fuse, replace it if necessary ⇒ page 169.
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot ⇒ page 16.

If you are not able to rectify the operational problem yourself, or if the cooling capacity decreases, switch the cooling system off. Contact a specialist garage. ■

## Starting-off and Driving

### Setting steering wheel position

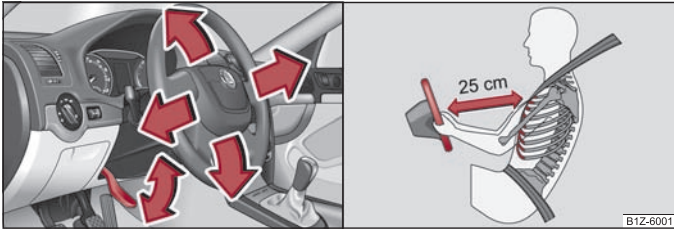


Fig. 83 Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below steering column

You can set the height and the forward/back position of the steering wheel to the desired position.

- Adjust the driver seat ⇒ page 11.
- Pull the lever below the steering column down ⇒ fig. 83 - left. Observe the guide-lines ⇒ ⚠.
- Set the steering wheel to the desired position (concerning height and forward/back position).
- Push the lever upwards as far as the stop.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- **You must not adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving!**
- **The driver must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 83 - right. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!**
- **For safety reasons the lever must always be firmly pushed up to avoid the steering wheel altering its position unintentionally when driving - risk of accident!**

#### ⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **If you adjust the steering wheel further towards the head, you will reduce the protection offered by the driver airbag in the event of an accident. Make sure the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.**
- **When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel firmly in the 12 o'clock position or in another way (e.g. in the middle of the steering wheel or at the inner steering wheel edge). In such cases, injuries to the arms, the hands and the head can occur when the driver airbag is deployed. ■**

### Ignition lock

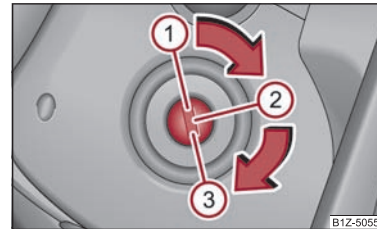


Fig. 84 Ignition lock positions

#### Petrol engines

- ① - ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked.
- ② - ignition switched on
- ③ - start engine

#### Diesel engines


- ① - interruption of fuel supply, ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked.
- ② - heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on

- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period. Otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

③ - start engine

#### Applies to all models:

##### Position ①

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin is heard to engage. You should always lock the steering as a general rule if you leave your vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against possible theft of your vehicle ⇒ .

##### Position ②

Move the steering wheel back and forward a little if the ignition key cannot, or cannot easily be turned into this position, in order to release the steering lock.

##### Position ③

The engine is started in this position. At the same time any switched on low beam or main beam or other electrical components with major electrical consumers are briefly switched off. The ignition key moves back into position ② after being released.

The ignition key must be turned back into position ① each time before starting the engine again. The starter repeat lock in the ignition lock prevents the starter being engaged when the engine is running and thus getting damaged.

#### WARNING

- When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position ② (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the warning lights coming on. If this is not the case, it could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel - risk of accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock can engage immediately - risk of accident!
- Always withdraw the ignition key if you are going to leave the vehicle, even for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Children might otherwise start the engine or switch on electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) - risk of accident or injury! ■

## Starting the engine

### General

*You can only start the engine only using an original ignition key.*

- Place the gearshift lever into neutral and put on the handbrake firmly before starting the engine.
- Before starting, it is necessary to depress the clutch pedal and to keep it pressed down until the engine starts. If you try and start the engine without pressing the clutch pedal, the engine will not start. A message in the information display of the instrument cluster will also appear indicate the need to press the clutch pedal.
- Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts otherwise you may damage the starter.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine until oil pressure can be built up in the hydraulic valve clearance compensation. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

#### If the engine does not start ...

You can use the battery of another vehicle as a jump-start aid ⇒ page 165.

It is only possible to tow-start vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox. The tow-starting distance must not be more than 50 metres. Observe the following guidelines ⇒ page 167, "Tow-starting and towing vehicle".

#### WARNING

- Never run the engine in non ventilated or enclosed areas. The exhaust gases of the engine contain besides the odourless and colourless carbon monoxide a poisonous gas - hazard! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running.

#### Caution

- The starter may only be operated (ignition key position ③), if the engine is not running. If the starter is immediately operated after switching off the engine, the starter or the engine can be damaged.

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads as long as the engine has not yet reached its normal operating temperature - risk of damaging the engine!
- Vehicles which are fitted with an exhaust gas catalytic converter should not be tow-started over a distance of more than 50 metres.



### For the sake of the environment

Never warm up the engine when the vehicle is standing. Drive off right away. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower. ■

## Petrol engines

These engines are fitted with a starter system which selects the correct fuel-air mixture for every external air temperature.


- Do not operate accelerator before and when starting engine.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting after 10 seconds if the engine does not start right away and wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- It is possible that the fuse on the electrical fuel pump is defect if the engine still does not start. Check the fuse and replace it if necessary ⇒ page 169.
- Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

It may be necessary, if the engine is **very hot**, to slightly depress the accelerator after the engine has started. ■


## Diesel engines

### Glow plug system

Diesel engines are equipped with a glow plug system, the preglow period being controlled automatically in line with the coolant temperature and outside temperature.

The preglow indicator light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on.


**You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.**

- You should start the engine immediately after the glow plug warning light  has gone out.
- The glow plug warning light will come on for about one second if the engine is at a normal operating temperature or if the outside temperature is above +5 °C. This means that you can start the engine **right away**.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting after 10 seconds if the engine does not start right away and wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- It is possible that the fuse on the diesel preglow system is defect if the engine still does not start. Check the fuse and replace it if necessary ⇒ page 169.
- Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

### Starting the engine after the fuel tank has run dry

It may take longer than normal to start the engine after refuelling if the fuel tank has run completely dry - up to one minute. This is because the fuel system must first of all be filled while the attempting to start the engine. ■

## Switching off the engine

- The engine can be switched off by turning the ignition key into position  ⇒ page 77, fig. 84.



### WARNING

- **Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!**
- **The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort for braking is required when engine is switched off. Because if you do not stop as normal, this can cause an accident and severe injuries.**



### Caution

you should not switch the engine off right away at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated for a lengthy period at high loads but should be allowed it to run at idling speed for about 2 minutes. This prevents any accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off. ▶



### Note

- The radiator fan may continue running for a further 10 minutes or so after the engine and the ignition have been switched off. The coolant fan may, however, also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises because of an accumulation of heat in the engine or if the engine is warm and the engine compartment is additionally heated by strong sunlight.
- This is why particular care is required when carrying out any work in the engine compartment ⇒ page 140, "Working in the engine compartment". ■

## Shifting



**Fig. 85** The shift pattern: 5-speed manual gearbox

Shift into reverse only when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before engaging reverse gear in order to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

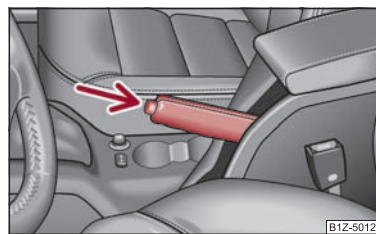
### WARNING

**Never engage the reverse gear when driving - risk of accident!**

### Note

- One should not lay the hand on the shift lever while driving the vehicle. The pressure of the hand will be transferred to the gearshift forks in the gearbox. This can, over a period of time, lead to early wear of the gearshift forks.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears, in order to avoid unnecessary wear and damage. ■

## Handbrake





**Fig. 86** Centre console: Handbrake

### Applying the handbrake

- Pull the handbrake lever up fully.

### Releasing the handbrake

- Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and **at the same time** press in the locking button ⇒ fig. 86.
- Hold the button pressed and push the handbrake lever down fully ⇒ .

The handbrake warning light  lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if you have inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The handbrake warning is activated if you drive at a speed of more than 6 km/h for more than 3 seconds. ▶

**⚠ WARNING**

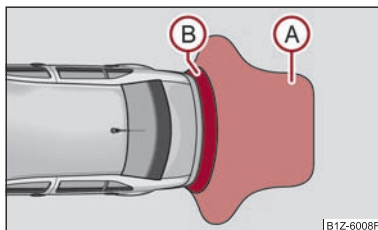
- Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating which will have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system - risk of accident! In addition this can result in premature wear of the rear brake pads.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle might then move off - risk of accident!

**⚠ Caution**

Each time the vehicle is parked, first of all apply the handbrake and then additionally engage the 1st gear. ■

**Rear parking aid\***

*The parking aid provides a warning of obstacles behind the vehicle.*



**Fig. 87** Parking aid: Detection range of rear sensors

The audible parking aid determines the distance from the rear bumper to an obstacle behind the car with the aid of ultrasound sensors. These ultrasound sensors are integrated in the rear bumper.

**Range of sensors**

The clearance warning begins at a distance of about 160 cm from the obstacle (area **A**) => fig. 87). The interval between the warning signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced.

A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm (area **B**) - danger area. **Do not reverse any further after this signal sounds!** If the vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted towing device\*, the border of the danger area - continuous tone - extends 5 cm further behind the vehicle. The vehicle can be extended through an installed detachable towing device.

On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted radio\*, the distance to the obstruction is shown graphically in the display. On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the sensors are deactivated when towing a trailer. The driver is informed about this by a graphic display (vehicle towing a trailer) in the radio\* display. The factory-fitted radio\* can be set so that the play function volume decreases when activating the parking aid, see Owner's Manual radio\*. This improves the audibility of the parking aid.

**Activating**

The parking aid is activated automatically when **reverse gear** is engaged and the ignition is turned on. This is confirmed by a brief acknowledgement signal.

**Deactivating**

The parking aid is deactivated by taking the car out of reverse gear.

**⚠ WARNING**

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when parking the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres.
- You should therefore satisfy yourself, before reversing, that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., behind your vehicle. Such obstacles might not be within the range detected by the sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the signal of the parking aid. Thus, such objects or people may not be recognised by the sensors of the parking aid.

**i Note**

- The parking aid does not operate if you are towing a trailer (applies to models which feature a factory-fitted towing device\*).

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after switching the ignition on and engaging reverse gear, and there is no obstacle close to your vehicle, this indicates a system fault. Have the fault rectified by a specialist workshop.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of ice to enable the parking aid to operate properly. ■

## Cruise control system (CCS)\*

### Introduction

The cruise control system (CCS) maintains a constant speed, above approx. 30 km/h (20 mph), once it has been set, without you having to depress the accelerator pedal. This is only possible to the extent permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine. The cruise control system makes it possible - particularly on long journeys - for you to rest your "accelerator foot".

#### WARNING

- **The cruise control system must not, for safety reasons, be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads or loose chippings) - risk of accident!**
- **In order to prevent unintentional use of the cruise control system, always switch off the system after use.**

#### Note

- Always depress the clutch pedal if you switch on the cruise control system when the gearbox is in Neutral. Otherwise the engine can rev up unintentionally.
- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving on steep downhill sections. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. One should shift down in good time to a lower gear or slow the vehicle down by applying the foot brake. ■

### Storing a speed

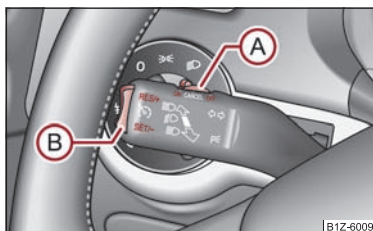


Fig. 88 Operating lever: Rocker button and switch of cruise control system

The cruise control system is operated by means of the switch **A** and rocker button **B** in the left lever of the multi-functional switch.

- Press the switch **A** ⇒ fig. 88 into the position **ON**.
- After the desired speed has been reached, press the rocker button **B** into the **SET** position.

After you have released the rocker button **B** out of the position **SET**, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

You can **increase** the speed by depressing the accelerator. Releasing the accelerator will cause the speed to **drop** again to the set speed.

This does not apply, however, if you drive at a speed which is more than 10 km/h higher than the set speed for a period of longer than 5 minutes. The stored speed will be cancelled in the memory. You have to re-store the desired speed.

One can **reduce** the speed in the usual manner. The system is switched off temporarily by actuating the brake or clutch pedal ⇒ page 83.

#### WARNING

**First ensure that it is not too high for the traffic conditions which exist at that moment before resuming the stored speed. ■**

## Changing a stored speed

You can also change the speed of the vehicle without depressing the accelerator.

### Faster

- You can **increase** the stored speed without depressing the accelerator, by pressing the rocker button **(B)** ⇒ page 82, fig. 88 in the **RES** position.
- The speed of the vehicle will increase continuously if you hold the rocker button pressed in the **RES** position. Once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, release the rocker button. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

### Slower

- You can **decrease** the stored speed by pressing the rocker button **(B)** in the **SET** position.
- Holding down the rocker button pressed in the **SET** position will cause the speed of the vehicle to reduce continuously. Once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, release the rocker button. The set speed is then stored in the memory.
- If you release the rocker button when the vehicle is travelling at a speed of less than 30 km/h, the speed is not stored. The memory is erased. It is then necessary to again store the speed with the rocker button **(B)** in the position **SET** after an increase in speed of the vehicle to more than 30 km/hour. ■

## Switching off the cruise control system temporarily

- You can **switch off temporarily** the cruise control system, if you depress the brake or clutch pedal.
- You can switch off temporarily the cruise control system, if you press the switch **(A)** in the middle position.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

You can **resume** the stored speed by releasing the brake or clutch pedal and by pressing the button **(B)** ⇒ page 82, fig. 88 in the position **RES**.

### WARNING

First ensure that it is not too high for the traffic conditions which exist at that moment before resuming the stored speed. ■

## Switching off the cruise control system completely

- Press the switch **(A)** ⇒ page 82, fig. 88 to the right into position **OFF**. ■

## Communication

### Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

The installation of a mobile phone and two-way radio system in a vehicle should be carried out by a specialist garage.

Škoda Auto permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 Watts.

It is essential that you inform a specialist garage about the possibilities to assemble and operate mobile phones and two-way radio sets which have a power output of more than 10 W. The garage will inform you which technical possibilities exist for retrofitting mobile phones.

Operation of mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with functioning of the electronic systems of your vehicle. The reasons for this may be:

- no external aerial,
- external aerial incorrectly installed,
- transmission power greater than 10 watts.



#### Note

Observe the country-specific regulations for the use of mobile phones in vehicles. ■



#### WARNING

- **If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in the vehicle without using a special external aerial or an external aerial which has been incorrectly installed, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field in the interior of the vehicle.**
- **Please concentrate fully at all times on your driving!**
- **You must not install two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts on the covers of the airbags or within the immediate deployment range of airbags. This might result in injuries to the occupants in the event of an accident.**
- **Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision. In this case, the occupants of the vehicle might be injured.**

# Safety

## Passive Safety

### Basic information

#### Driving the safe way

*Passive safety measures reduce the risk of injury in accident situations.*

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children. It is therefore important, in particular, to comply with the notes and warnings in this section for your own interest and in the interest of those travelling with you.

#### WARNING

- **This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants. You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.**
- **The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle. ■**

#### Safety equipment

*The safety equipment is part of the occupant protection and it can reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.*

“Do not put at risk” your safety and the safety of those travelling with you. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment can reduce the risk of injuries. The following list contains part of the safety equipment in your vehicle:

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats,
- belt force limiter for front seats and outer rear seats\*,
- belt tensioner for front seats,

- seat belt height adjuster for front seats,
- front airbag for the driver and the front seat passenger\*,
- side airbags\*,
- head airbags\*,
- anchoring points for child seat using the “ISOFIX” system,
- anchoring points for child seat using the “Top Tether” system,
- head restraint adjustable for height,
- adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations. The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

For this reason you will be provided with information on why this equipment is very important, how it protects you and the occupants, what should be observed when using the equipment and how you and the people travelling with you can make full use of the existing safety equipment. This Owner's Manual contains important warning notes, which you and those travelling with you should pay attention to in order to reduce a risk of injury.

#### Safety concerns everybody! ■

#### Before setting off

*The driver is always fully responsible for his occupants and for the operating safety of the vehicle.*

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off:

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Inspect the tyre inflation pressure. ▶

- Ensure that all the windows offer a good visibility to the outside.
- Safely attach the items of luggage ⇒ page 57, "Loading the luggage compartment".
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedal.
- Adjust the mirror, the front seat and the head restraint to match your body size.
- Point out to your occupants that the head restraints must be adjusted to match their body size.
- Protect the children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts ⇒ page 103, "Transporting children safely".
- Adopt the correct seated position ⇒ page 86, "Correct seated position". Also inform your occupants to adopt the correct seated position.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly. Also inform your occupants to properly fasten the seat belts ⇒ page 91, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?". ■

### What influences the driving safety?

*The driving safety is primarily determined by the style of driving and the personal behaviour of all the occupants.*

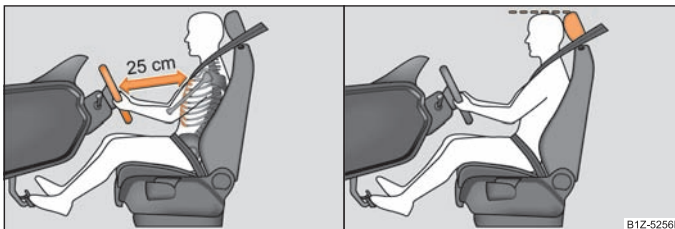
The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk. Please refer to the following guidelines.

- Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your occupants or mobile phone calls.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol, drugs.
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Adjust the driving speed at all times to the road condition as well as to the traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys - at the latest every two hours. ■

## Correct seated position

### Correct seated position for the driver

*Correct seated position for the driver is important for safe and relaxed driving.*



**Fig. 89** The correct distance of the driver from the steering wheel/the correct head restraint adjustment for the driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting:

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm ⇒ fig. 89 - left.
- Position the driver seat in the forward/back direction so that you are able to fully press the pedals with your legs at a slight angle.
- Adjust the seat backrest so that you are able to reach the highest point of the steering wheel with your arms at a slight angle.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ fig. 89 - right.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 91, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".

Manual driver seat adjustment ⇒ page 11, "Adjusting the front seats".



#### WARNING

- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.

- The driver must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel ⇒ page 86, fig. 89 - left. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel firmly in the 12 o'clock position or in another way (e.g. in the middle of the steering wheel or at the inner steering wheel edge). In such cases, injuries to the arms, the hands and the head can occur when the driver airbag is deployed.
- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system - risk of injury!
- Ensure that there are no objects in the footwell as any objects may get behind the pedals during a driving or braking manoeuvre. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, to brake or accelerate. ■

### Correct seated position for the front passenger

*The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the dash panel so that the airbag offers him the greatest possible safety it is deployed.*

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting:

- Adjust the front passenger seat as far as possible to the rear.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ page 86, fig. 89 - right.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 91, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated ⇒ page 101, "Deactivating an airbag".

Manual front passenger adjustment ⇒ page 11, "Adjusting the front seats".

**⚠ WARNING**

- The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.
- The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Keep your feet in the footwell at all times while driving. Never place your feet on the dash panel, out of the window or on the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!
- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system - risk of injury! ■

### Correct seated position for the occupants on the rear seats

*Occupants on the rear seats must sit upright, keep the feet in the footwell and must have their seat belts correctly fastened.*

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following:

- Adjust the head restraints so that the top edge of the head restraints is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ page 86, fig. 89 - on the right.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 91, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".
- If you are transporting ⇒ page 103, "Transporting children safely" children in the vehicle, please use a suitable child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING**

- The head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size, in order to offer an optimal protection for you and your occupants. ▶



**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Keep your feet in the footwell at all times while driving. Never place your feet out of the window or on the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!**
- **If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt. ■**

**Examples of an incorrect seated position**

*An incorrect seated position can lead to severe injuries or death for the occupants.*

Seat belts offer their optimum protection only if the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt. The driver is fully responsible for himself and the occupants, in particular for the children. Do not permit an occupant to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains the examples of seated positions which are dangerous for the occupants. This list is not complete, however we would like you to get familiar with this subject.

Therefore, while the car is moving never:

- stand up in the vehicle,
- stand up on the seats,
- kneel onto the seats,
- tilt the seat backrest fully to the back,
- lean against the dash panel,
- lie on the rear seats,
- only sit on the front area of the seat,
- sit to the side,
- lean out of the window,

- put the feet out of the window,
- put the feet on the dash panel,
- put the feet on the seat upholstery,
- occupy the footwell,
- have the seat belt not fastened,
- occupy the luggage compartment.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.**
- **Before setting off, please adopt the correct seated position and do not change this seated position while the car is moving. Also advise your occupants to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this seated position while the car is moving. ■**

## Seat belts

### Why seat belts?



Fig. 90 Driver wearing seat belt

It is a proven fact that seat belts offer good protection in accidents ⇒ fig. 90. Thus wearing a seat belt is a legal requirement in most countries.

Seat belts which have been correctly fastened and adjusted hold the occupants of the car in the correct seated position ⇒ fig. 90. The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt, profit to a major extent from the fact that the kinetic energy is optimally absorbed by the belts. The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Accident statistics prove that seat belts which are fastened and properly adjusted reduce the risk of an injury and enhance the chance of survival in a major accident ⇒ page 89.

It is important that you pay attention to safety measures, particularly when transporting children in the vehicle ⇒ page 103, "What you should know about transporting children!".

### WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt each time before setting off, also when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child ⇒ page 91.
- It is important for the belt webbing to be properly routed if the seat belts are to offer the maximum protection. You can see a description of how safety belts should be fitted properly on the next pages.

### Note

Please comply with any differing legal requirements when using the seat belts. ■

### The physical principle of a frontal collision



Fig. 91 The driver is thrown forward if not wearing a belt/the rear seat occupant is thrown forward if not wearing a belt

The physical principle of a frontal accident can be explained quite simply:

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants. The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle and the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident. ▶

The speed of the vehicle is, nevertheless, the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The common opinion that it is possible to support your body in a minor accident with your hands, is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed within the range from 30 km/hour to 50 km/hour, the forces which are produced on your body in the event of an accident can easily exceed 10.000 N (Newton). This equals a weight of one tonne (1 000 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the vehicle not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the vehicle, such as steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen, ⇒ page 89, fig. 91 - left. The occupants of a vehicle who have not fastened their seat belts may even be thrown out of the vehicle. This can result in fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear seat occupants fasten their seat belts as they will otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident. A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front ⇒ page 89, fig. 91 - right. ■

## Important safety information regarding the use of seat belts

*The correct use of the seat belts considerably reduces the risk of injury!*

### WARNING

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- It is important that the belt webbing is properly routed if the seat belts are to offer their maximum protection ⇒ page 91.
- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated ⇒ page 86, "Correct seated position".

### WARNING (continued)

- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys etc.) as this may be a cause of injuries.
- Bulky, loose clothing (e.g. a winter coat over a jacket) does not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.
- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. A soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel ⇒ page 135, "Seat belts".
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked by paper or similar objects otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Inspect the seat belts regularly to ensure they are in good condition. If you find seat belts which have damage to the seat belt webbing, seat belt connections, to the inertia reels or to the lock, the relevant safety belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not make an attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced - this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.
- In certain countries it is possible to use seat belts which differ in terms of their operation from the seat belts which are described on the pages which follow. ■

## How are seat belts correctly fastened?

### Fastening three-point seat belts

Fasten your seat belt before starting!



Fig. 92 Routing of webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt

- Correctly adjust the front seat and the head restraint before fastening your seat belt ⇒ page 53.
- Slowly pull the belt webbing at the tongue of the lock over your chest and pelvis ⇒ ⚠.
- Insert the tongue of the lock into the seat belt buckle belonging to the seat until it is heard to lock in place.
- Pull on the seat belt to check that it has also reliably engaged in the lock.

Each three-point seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel. This inertia reel offers you complete freedom of movement if the belt is unreeled slowly. If the brakes are applied suddenly, the inertia reel will block. It also blocks the seat belts when the car accelerates, when driving uphill and when cornering.

Expectant mothers must also wear seat belts ⇒ ⚠.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across your neck but must run approximately over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the hip and must never be routed**

#### ⚠ WARNING (continued)

across the stomach. It must always fit snugly ⇒ fig. 92 - left. Adjust the belt webbing as required.

- The lap part of the belt should be positioned as low as possible at the pelvis of an expectant mother in order to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen ⇒ fig. 92 - right.
- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- Only insert the lock tongue into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. This will affect the protection which the belt offers and increase the risk of an injury. ■

### Seat belt height adjuster



Fig. 93 Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible for you to adapt the routing of the three-point seat belt in the area of the shoulder to match your body size.

- Move the height adjuster in the desired direction up or down ⇒ fig. 93.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place. ▶

### WARNING

Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is positioned approximately across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.

### Note

It is also possible to adapt the routing of the belt webbing at the front seats by adjusting the height of the seat. ■

## Taking seat belts off



Fig. 94 Releasing lock tongue from belt lock

- Press the red button in the belt lock ⇒ fig. 94. The spring force causes the tongue of the lock to jump out.
- Guide the seat belt back with your hand to enable the inertia reel to wind up the belt webbing more easily.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of. ■

## Three-point safety belt for the middle rear seat

Your car is equipped as standard with the three-point seat belt in the middle rear seat. It is used in the same way as the three-point seat belts on the left and right (at front and rear).

### WARNING

The three-point safety belt for the rear middle seat can only fulfil its function reliably when the backrests are correctly locked into position ⇒ page 54. ■

## Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts, and is a supplement to the protection afforded by the airbag system.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The belt tensioner is deployed in the event of a frontal collision of major severity. A powder charge is ignited in the inertia reels during deployment. The belt webbing is pulled into the inertia reels by a mechanical system and the belt is tensioned.

The belt tensioners are not activated in case of minor frontal and rear-end collisions, in the case of vehicle rollover or accidents, through which no long delays are incurred to the vehicle. In the case of a side collision, only the belt tensioner of the front seat on the side on which the collision takes place is deployed.

### WARNING

- **Any work on the belt tensioner and the seat belt, including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.**
- **The protective function of the belt tensioner is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.**
- **The Owner's Manual must also be handed over to the new owner if the vehicle is sold.**

### Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle. ▶


- It is essential to pay attention to relevant safety regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system are scrapped. Specialist garages are familiar with these regulations which can be reviewed there.
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements. ■

## Airbag system

### Description of the airbag system

#### General information on the airbag system

The front airbag system is complementary to the three-point seat belts and offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and passenger in the event of a frontal collision.

In the case of a violent side crash, the side airbags\* and head airbags\* reduce the risk of injuries to the occupants on the side of the collision ⇒ .

The airbag system is only functional after the ignition has been switched on.

The operational readiness of the airbag system is monitored electronically. The airbag indicator light comes on for a few seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

#### The airbag system (according to vehicle equipment) consists of:

- an electronic control unit,
- front airbag for the driver and the front seat passenger\*,
- side airbags\*,
- head airbags\*,
- an airbag warning light in the instrument cluster,
- a key-operated switch for switching on/off the front seat passenger airbag\* ⇒ page 101,
- an indicator light for a switched off front seat passenger airbag\* in the middle of the dash panel ⇒ page 101.

#### A fault in the airbag system exists if:

- the airbag indicator light does not light up when the ignition is switched on,
- the airbag indicator light does not go out after about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- the airbag indicator light goes out and comes on again after the ignition is switched on,
- the airbag indicator light comes on or flickers when driving,

- an airbag indicator light showing a switched-off front passenger airbag\* in the middle of the dash panel flashes.



#### WARNING

- **To enable the occupants of a vehicle to be protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant ⇒ page 86, “Correct seated position”.**
- **If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.**
- **Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage if a fault exists. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.**
- **No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system.**
- **It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.**
- **The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.**
- **The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.**
- **If you sell your car, please hand over the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the documents relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag are also part of the vehicle documents!**
- **If the vehicle or individual parts of the airbag system are scrapped, it is essential to observe the relevant safety precautions. The authorised Škoda Service Partners are familiar with these regulations.**
- **When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements. ■**

## When are the airbags deployed?

The airbag system is designed in such a way that the driver and front passenger airbag are deployed in the event of a **violent frontal collision**.

In the case of a **violent side collision**, the side airbag\* on the side of the vehicle at which the collision occurs, is deployed together with the relevant head airbag\*.

In special accident scenarios, the front as well as the relevant side and head airbags may be deployed together.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, in the case of rear-end collisions and vehicle rollover.

### Deployment factors

It is not possible to state globally which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation as the circumstances which exist in the case of accidents vary greatly. An important role in this case is played by factors such as the type of object against which the vehicle impacts (hard, soft), the angle of impact, the relative speed during the accident etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs during a collision. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

### The airbags are not deployed if:

- ignition off,
- a minor frontal collision,
- a minor side collision,
- a rear-end collision,
- Rollover of the vehicle.



### Note

- A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:
  - The interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
  - The hazard warning light is switched on,
  - All the doors are unlocked,
  - the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted. ■

## Front airbags

### Description of the front airbags

*The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belt!*

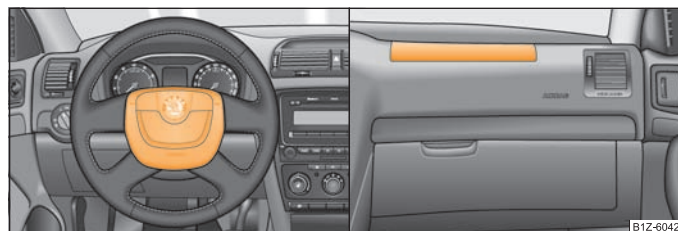


Fig. 95 Driver airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dash panel

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 95 - left. The front airbag for the front passenger\* is housed in the dash panel above the storage compartment ⇒ fig. 95 - right. The installation positions are each marked with the "AIRBAG" logo.

The front airbag system is complementary to the three-point seat belts and offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and passenger in the event of a frontal collision. ⇒ page 96

The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but is part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept. **Please note that an airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a seat belt which is fastened.**



Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the driver and front passenger in a correct seated position in the event of a frontal collision so as to enable the front airbags to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 89, "Why seat belts?".

### **Note**

The dash panel must be replaced after the front passenger airbag has been deployed. ■

## Function of the front airbags

*Risk of injury to the head and chest area is reduced by fully inflated airbags.*



**Fig. 96** Deployed front airbags

The airbag system is designed in such a way that the driver and the front passenger airbag\* are deployed in the event of a frontal collision of major severity.

In certain accident situations, the front, side and head airbag are deployed together.

If the airbags are deployed, the airbags are filled with a propellant gas and inflated in front of the driver and front passenger ⇒ **fig. 96**. The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

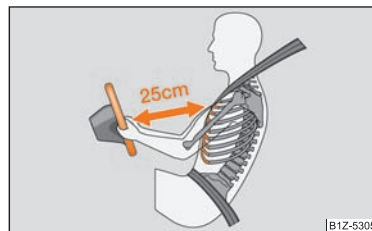
The specially developed airbag allows the gas to flow out of the inflated airbag in a controlled manner (depending on the load of the particular car occupant) in order to cushion head and chest areas. The airbag then deflates subsequently to such an extent, after an accident, to again provide a clear view forward.

A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct ⇒ page 96. ■

## Important safety information regarding the front airbag system

*Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!*



**Fig. 97** Safe distance to steering wheel

### **WARNING**

- **Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!**
- **For the driver and front passenger it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel ⇒ **fig. 97**. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.**
- **It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

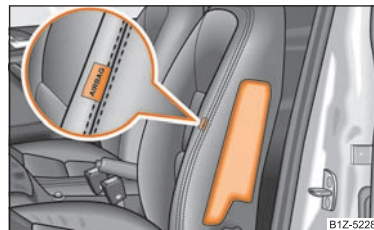
the direction of travel) ⇒ page 101, “Deactivating an airbag”. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. The national legal provisions in certain countries require that both the front, side and head airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national legal provisions regarding the use of child safety seats.

- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not be stuck onto, covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a dry cloth or a cloth moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. may be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within the immediate area.
- No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system. Any work on the airbag system including installing and removing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never carry out changes on the front bumper or on the body.
- Never place any objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel. ■

## side airbags\*

### Description of the side airbags

*The side airbag together with the head airbag offers enhanced occupant protection in the event of a side collision.*



**Fig. 98** Installation position of side airbag in driver seat

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats ⇒ fig. 98.

The side airbag system in combination with the three-point seat belts, offers additional protection for the upper area of the body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of the occupants of the vehicle in the event of severe side collisions ⇒ page 98.

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the occupants of the front or rear exterior seats in position so as to enable the side airbag to offer the maximum protection in the event of a side collision.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection.

Each time the side airbags are deployed, the head airbag\* and the front belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the collision occurs, are automatically deployed at the same time in order to provide the occupant with enhanced protection. ■

## Function of the side airbags

*Risk of injury to the upper part of the body is reduced by fully inflated side airbags.*



Fig. 99 Inflated side airbag

When the side airbags are deployed, the head airbag\* and the belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side → fig. 99.

If an airbag is deployed, the airbag is filled with gas. The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door. ■

## Important safety information on the side airbag

*Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!*



### WARNING

- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel) ⇒ page 101, "Deactivating an airbag". If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front



### WARNING (continued)

passenger airbag is deployed. The national legal provisions in certain countries require that both the front, side and head airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national legal provisions regarding the use of child safety seats.

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat ⇒ page 105, "Child safety and side airbag\*\*".
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries ⇒ page 103, "What you should know about transporting children!".
- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as a can holder, should be attached to the doors.
- The airbag control unit operates together with the pressure sensors, which are attached in the front doors. For this reason no modifications must be carried out at the doors as well as at the door panels (for example additional installation of loudspeakers). Resulting damages can have a negative affect on the operation of the airbag system. All work on the front doors and their panels must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- In the event of a side collision, the side airbags will not function properly, if the sensors cannot measure the increasing air pressure inside the doors, because the air can escape through large, non-sealed openings in the door panel.
  - Never drive with removed inner door panels.
  - Never drive, if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the remaining openings have not been properly sealed.
  - Never drive, if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, only if the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
  - Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled, if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts are installed in the inner door panels.

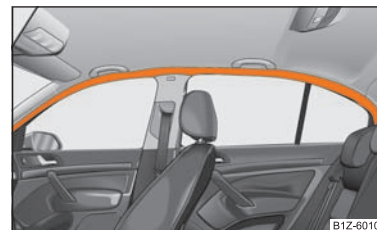
**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- Always work with an authorised Škoda dealer or have it carried out by a competent specialist workshop.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the clothes hooks to the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorised by Škoda Auto. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired without delay by your specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.
- Any work on the side airbag system including removing and installing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing seats) must only be carried out by a specialist garage. ■

## Head airbags\*

### Description of the head airbags

*The head airbag together with the side airbag offers enhanced occupant protection in the event of a side collision.*



**Fig. 100** Installation position of head airbag

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car ⇒ fig. 100. The installation positions are each marked with the "AIRBAC" logo.

The head airbag together with the three-point seat belts and the side airbags, offers additional protection for the head and neck area of the occupants in the event of a side collision of major severity ⇒ page 100.

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the driver and the occupants in a correct seated position in the event of a side collision so as to enable the head airbags to offer the maximum protection. You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 89, "Why seat belts?".

Together with other elements (such as cross bars in the seats, stable vehicle structure) the head airbags are the consequent further development of occupant protection in the case of side collisions. ■

## Function of the head airbag

The risk of injury to the head and neck area is reduced in the event of a side collision by fully inflated head airbags.

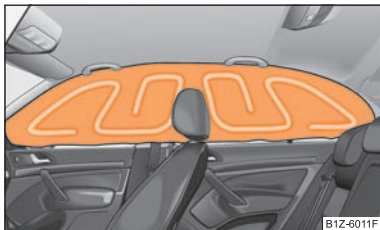


Fig. 101 Inflated head airbag

In the case of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag ⇒ fig. 101 and the belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

If the system is deployed, the airbags are filled with propellant gas and extend over the entire area of the side window including the door pillar ⇒ fig. 101.

The protection offered by the head airbag is thus available simultaneously both to the front occupants of the car seated on the side on which the accident occurs, as well as to the rear occupants. Any impact of the head against parts of the interior or objects outside of the car, is cushioned by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area. The head airbag also offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

In certain accident situations, the front, side and head airbag are deployed simultaneously.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident. A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle. ■

## Important safety information on the head airbag

Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!



### WARNING

- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel) ⇒ page 101, "Deactivating an airbag". If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. The national legal provisions in certain countries require that both the front, side and head airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national legal provisions regarding the use of child safety seats.
- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the clothes hooks to the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. In addition, it is not permitted to use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing.
- The airbag control unit operates together with the sensors, which are attached in the front doors. For this reason no modifications must be carried out at the doors as well as at the door panels (for example additional installation of loudspeakers). Resulting damages can have a negative affect on the operation of the airbag system. All work on the front doors and their panels must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- There must not be any other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the sitting occupant and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled to the side windows into the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- Installing impermissible accessories in the area of the head airbags may considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it ▶

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted may in certain circumstances be thrown into the interior of the car and cause injuries to the occupants ⇒ page 157, "Accessories, changing and replacing parts".

- Any work on the head airbag system including installing and removing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing headliner) must only be carried out by a specialist garage. ■

## Deactivating an airbag

### Deactivating airbags

*If any airbags have been deactivated, switch them on again as soon as possible so that they are able to again provide their proper protection.*

There is the technical means installed within your vehicle to switch off the front, side\* or head airbag\* (take out of commission).

This is why you should have the deactivation of the airbags carried out by a specialist garage.

On vehicles equipped with the switch for deactivation of the airbags, you can deactivate the front passenger airbag by means of this switch ⇒ page 101.

**Deactivation of airbags is envisaged only for particular instances, such as if:**

- you must **in exceptional cases** use a child seat on the front passenger seat where the child has its back to the direction of travel of the vehicle (in some countries this must be in the direction of travel due to other legal regulations applying) ⇒ page 103, "Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats",
- you are not able to maintain the distance of at least 25 cm between middle of steering wheel and chest, despite the driver seat being correctly adjusted,
- special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability,
- you have installed other seats (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

### Monitoring the airbag system

The functionality of the airbag system is also monitored electronically when one airbag has been switched off.

**If the airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment:**

- The warning light for the airbag system lights up for 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes for 12 seconds afterwards in 2 second intervals.

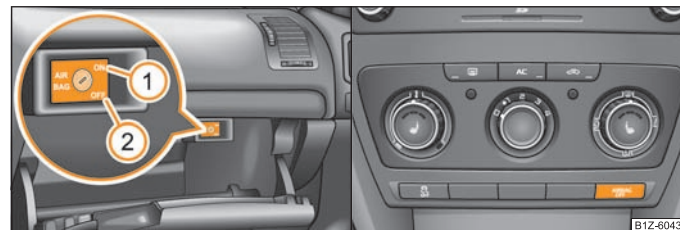
**Front passenger airbags switched off using the switch for front passenger airbags\* in storage compartment on the front passenger side:**

- the airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on for about 4 seconds each time the ignition is switched on,
- if the airbags are switched off, this is indicated in the middle of the dash panel by the lighting up of the indicator light **AIRBAG OFF** ⇒ fig. 102 - right.

### Note

Your authorised Škoda Service Partner will be able to advise you whether national legislation in your country allows airbags in your vehicle to be deactivated, and which ones. ■

### Switch for switching off the front passenger airbag\*



**Fig. 102 Storage compartment: Switch for switching off the front passenger airbag/indicator light for a switched off front seat passenger airbag**

The front passenger airbag is deactivated with the switch. ▶

### Deactivating an airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the switch for the front passenger airbag using the key in the position ② (OFF) ⇒ fig. 102.
- Check whether the indicator light **AIRBAG OFF** in the middle of the dash panel lights up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ fig. 102 - right.

### Switching on an airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the switch for the front passenger airbag using the key in the position ① (ON) ⇒ fig. 102.
- Check whether the indicator light **AIRBAG OFF** in the middle of the dash panel lights up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ fig. 102 - right.

The airbag should only be switched off under exceptional circumstances ⇒ page 101.

### Indicator light **AIRBAG OFF** (airbag switched off)

The indicator light for the front passenger airbag is located in the middle of the dash panel ⇒ fig. 102 - right.

If the front passenger airbag is **switched off**, the warning light for the front passenger airbag switch-off comes on about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.

There is a system fault present in the airbag switch off ⇒ ⚠ if the indicator light for the front passenger airbag switch off flashes. **Please have the car inspected immediately by a specialist garage.**

#### WARNING (continued)

- **It is also important to have the system inspected without delay by a specialist garage. ■**

#### WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for whether the front passenger airbag is switched on or switched off.**
- **Only switch off the front passenger airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for the front passenger airbag deactivation.**
- **If the warning light **AIRBAG OFF** (airbag switched off) flashes:**
  - **Front passenger airbag is not deployed in the event of an accident!**

## Transporting children safely

### What you should know about transporting children!

#### An introduction to the subject

*Accident statistics have revealed that children are generally more safely transported on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.*


Children younger than 12 years of age should normally travel on the rear seat of the vehicle (take note of any national legal provisions which differ from this). They should be secured there by means of a child restraint system or by using the existing seat belts depending on their age, body size and weight. The child seat should be mounted behind the front passenger seat for safety reasons.

The physical principle of an accident does, of course, also apply to children ⇒ page 89, "The physical principle of a frontal collision". They differ from adults in that their muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported by using special child safety seats in order to reduce this risk of injury.

Use only child safety seats which are officially approved and are suitable for children and which comply with the ECE-R 44 standard. Child safety seats are classified in 5 groups ⇒ page 105. Child restraint systems which have been tested for conformity to ECE-R 44 standard have a non-detachable test seal (a large E within a circle and below this the test number) attached to the seat.

We recommend that you use child safety seats from the Škoda genuine accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in Škoda vehicles. They fulfil the ECE-R 44 standard.


 <b>WARNING</b>
<b>Always comply with legal provisions and instructions from the relevant child safety seat manufacturer when installing and using the child seat ⇒ page 103.</b>

#### Note

Any varying national legal regulations take priority over the information provided in these instructions for use, or stated in this chapter. ■

#### Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats

*Correct use of child safety seats considerably reduces the risk of injury!*

 <b>WARNING</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>All the occupants of the car - in particular children - must wear a seat belt when the car is moving.</b></li> <li>● <b>Children, who are less than 1.50 m in height and who weigh less than 36 kg, must not use a normal seat belt without a child restraint system otherwise this may result in injuries to the stomach and neck areas. Comply with the national legal requirements.</b></li> <li>● <b>One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.</b></li> <li>● <b>You can transport a child safely in a suitable child safety seat ⇒ page 105, "Child seat"!</b></li> <li>● <b>Only one child may be fastened with a seat belt into a child safety seat.</b></li> <li>● <b>Never leave the child sitting unattended in the seat.</b></li> <li>● <b>Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.</b></li> <li>● <b>Never allow your child to be transported in a vehicle without the use of a suitable restraint system.</b></li> <li>● <b>Children should also never stand up in a vehicle or kneel on the seats when the vehicle is moving. In the event of an accident the child will be thrown through the vehicle and may as a result suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.</b></li> <li>● <b>Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front</b></li> </ul>



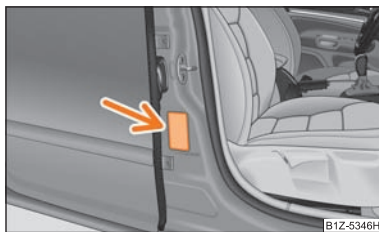
**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

passenger seat if the airbag system deploys in the event of an accident. This can result in severe or even fatal injuries.

- It is important that the belt webbing is properly routed if the seat belts are to offer their maximum protection ⇒ page 91, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?". Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat to the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel ⇒ page 101. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side and head airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. ■

### Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat

*Child safety seats should always be attached to the rear seats.*



**Fig. 103** Sticker on the centre column of the body on the front passenger side.

We recommend, for safety reasons, that you always mount a child restraint systems on the rear seats whenever possible. If you still decide, however, to use a child safety seat

on the front passenger seat then you must pay attention to the following warnings in connection with the use of the airbag system on the front passenger seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Warning – particular hazard!** Never use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This is also clearly stated on the sticker which is located on the centre column of the body on the front passenger side ⇒ **fig. 103**. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door. For some countries, the sticker is also affixed to the sun visor of the front passenger.
- However, if you still want to attach a child safety seat to the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel you must switch off the front passenger airbag ⇒ page 101, "Deactivating an airbag". If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- If the front passenger airbag has been switched off by a specialist garage using the vehicle system tester, the side and head passenger airbag\* remains switched on. In certain countries national legal provisions require that besides the front passenger airbag also the side or head passenger airbags are deactivated. Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- If a child safety seat in which the child faces in the direction of travel is used on the front passenger seat, the front passenger seat must be moved back fully. For vehicles with height adjustable front passenger seat, the seat must be put in the highest position.
- If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed. Have the airbag (or airbags) deactivated if necessary ⇒ page 101, "Deactivating an airbag".

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat. ■

**Child safety and side airbag\***

Children must never be seated in the deployment area of side or head airbags.

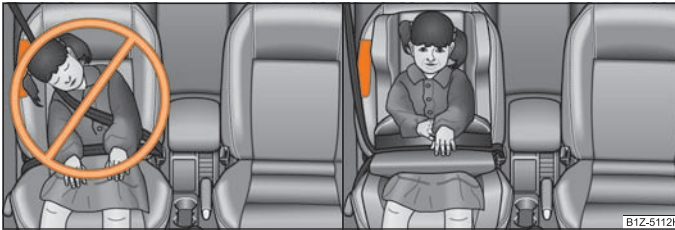


Fig. 104 Seated position of an unprotected child at risk from side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat?

In the event of a side collision, the side airbags offer the vehicle occupants enhanced protection.

The side airbags are inflated in fractions of a second in order to be able to provide this protection ⇒ page 98, "Function of the side airbags".

An airbag inflating develops such a strong force that an occupant who has not adopted an upright seated position may suffer injuries from the airbag or as a result of objects which are located within the deployment area of the side airbag.

**This applies particularly to children if they are not transported in accordance with legal requirements.**

The child is protected when seated in a child safety seat matching its age. Adequate room is available between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag and head airbag. The airbag offers optimal protection.

**⚠ WARNING**

- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel) ⇒ page 101. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side and head airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag - risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbag - risk of injury! ■

**Child seat****Classification of child seats into groups**

*Only child safety seats which have an official approval and are suitable for the child, may be used.*

ECE-R 44 standard applies to child safety seats. ECE-R means: Economic Commission of Europe - Regulation.

Child safety seats which have been tested for conformity to ECE-R 44 standard have a non-detachable test seal (a large E within a circle and below this the test number) attached to the seat.

Child safety seats are classified in 5 groups: ▶

Group	Weight	
0	0 - 10 kg	⇒ page 106
0+	up to 13 kg	⇒ page 106
1	9 - 18 kg	⇒ page 107
2	15 - 25 kg	⇒ page 107
3	22 - 36 kg	⇒ page 108

Children of more than 150 cm in height may use the seat belts fitted to the vehicle without a seat bolster. ■

### Use of child safety seats

An overview of the usefulness of child seats on each of the seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard:

Child seat of the group	Seat passenger seat	Rear seat outside	Rear seat middle
0	Ⓚ +	Ⓚ + Ⓣ	Ⓚ
0+	Ⓚ +	Ⓚ + Ⓣ	Ⓚ
1	Ⓚ +	Ⓚ + Ⓣ	Ⓚ
2 and 3	Ⓚ	Ⓚ	Ⓚ

- Ⓚ Universal category - seat is suitable for all approved types of child safety seats.
- + The seat can be fitted with fixing eyes for the "ISOFIX\*" system.
- Ⓣ The divided rear seat - seat can be fitted with fixing eyes for the system "Top Tether\*" ⇒ page 109. ■

### Child seats of group 0/0+



Fig. 105 Child seats of group 0/0+

The optimal solution for babies of up to about 9 months old weighing up to 10 kg or babies up to about 18 months old weighing up to 13 kg is a child safety seat which can be adjusted into the reclining position ⇒ fig. 105.

In view of the fact that such child seats are installed that the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, they must not be used on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 104, "Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat".

#### ⚠ WARNING

- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag (airbags) when attaching in exceptional circumstances a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel),
  - in a specialist garage
  - or by using the key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag\* ⇒ page 101, "Switch for switching off the front passenger airbag\*".
- The national legal provisions in certain countries require that both the front, side and head airbags be deactivated. Please comply with the appropriate national legal provisions which may differ regarding the use of child safety seats.
- If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed.

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat. ■

**Child safety seats in Group 1**

**Fig. 106** Child seat with padded table in Group 1 installed on rear seat bench facing the direction of travel

Child seats in Group 1 are for babies and small children up to 4 years of age with a weight of between 9 and 18 kilograms. It is best for children in the lower range of this group, to use a child seat which allows the child to sit with its back to the direction of travel. It is best for children in the upper range of the Group 0+, to use a child seat which allows the child to sit ⇒ [fig. 106](#) in the direction of travel.

Child safety seats in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, must not be used on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 104, "Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat".

**⚠ WARNING**

- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag (airbags) when attaching in exceptional circumstances a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel),
  - in a specialist garage
  - a key-operated switch for switching on/off the front seat passenger airbag\* ⇒ page 101, "Switch for switching off the front passenger airbag\*".

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- The national legal provisions in certain countries require that both the front, side and head airbags be deactivated. Please comply with the appropriate national legal provisions which may differ regarding the use of child safety seats.
- If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed.
- You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat. ■

**Child safety seats in Group 2**

**Fig. 107** Child seat in Group 2 installed on the rear seat facing the direction of travel

For children up to about 7 years of age weighing between 15 and 25 kg the optimal solution is a child safety seat in combination with the three-point seat belt ⇒ [fig. 107](#).

**⚠ WARNING**

- When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. If required, the airbag has to be deactivated,
  - in a specialist garage
  - or by using the key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag\* ⇒ page 101, "Switch for switching off the front passenger airbag\*".

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must run approximately across the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. It must on no account run across the neck. The lap part of the seat belt must run across the pelvis and fits snugly; it must not run over the belly. Tighten the belt webbing over your hip if necessary.
- Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. ■

### Child safety seats in Group 3



**Fig. 108** Child seat in Group 3 installed on the rear seat facing the direction of travel

For children of about 7 years of age weighing between 22 and 36 kg and of a height of less than 150 cm, the optimal solution is a child safety seat (seat bolster) in combination with the three-point seat belt ⇒ fig. 108.

Children of more than 150 cm in height may use the seat belts fitted to the vehicle without a seat bolster.

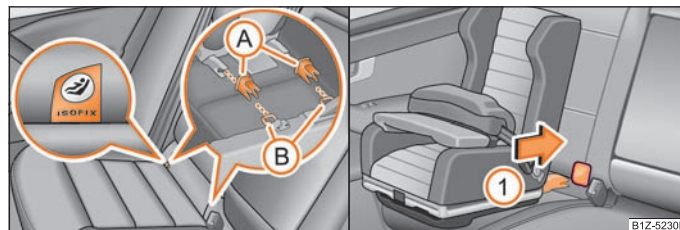
**⚠ WARNING**

- When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. If required, the front passenger airbag has to be deactivated,
  - in a specialist garage

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- or by using the key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag\* ⇒ page 101, “Switch for switching off the front passenger airbag\*”.
- The shoulder part of the seat belt must run approximately across the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. It must on no account run across the neck. The lap part of the seat belt must run across the pelvis and fits snugly; it must not run over the belly. Tighten the belt webbing over your hip if necessary.
- Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. ■

### Attaching a child seat using the “ISOFIX” system



**Fig. 109** Locking eyes (ISOFIX system)/the ISOFIX child seat is pushed into the mounting funnels

There are two fixing eyes\* between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the front passenger seat for fixing the “ISOFIX” system child seat in place. The locking eyes on the rear outside seats are located below the upholstery. The places are marked with signs with the logo “ISOFIX” ⇒ fig. 109 - left.

#### Install child seat

- Open the zip fasteners between the seat cushion and the seat backrest of the rear exterior seat. ▶

- Insert the mounting funnels (A) onto the locking eyes (B) between the seat backrest and the seat cushion ⇒ fig. 109.
- Push the notched arms of the child seat into the locking eyes in direction of arrow (i), until they are heard to lock in place ⇒ fig. 109.
- **Pull on both sides of the child seat!**

One can mount a child safety seat using the “ISOFIX” system quickly, easily and reliably. Please pay close attention to instructions from the manufacturer of the child safety seat when installing and removing the seat.

Child seats fitted with the “ISOFIX” system can only be mounted and fixed in a vehicle fitted with an “ISOFIX” system when these child seats have been released for this type of vehicle according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

You can obtain child seats with the “ISOFIX” attachment system from specialist garages who will also install it as well.

Complete installation instructions are enclosed with the child safety seat.

## Attaching child seat using the “Top Tether”\* system

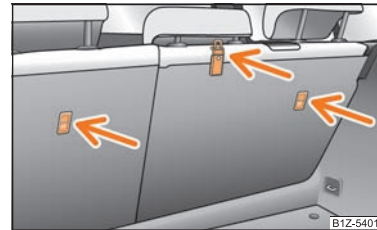


Fig. 110 Rear seat: Top Tether

In certain countries national legal provisions also require the equipment of the rear seat with fixing eyes for child seat using the “Top Tether” system ⇒ fig. 110.

Always perform the installation and removal of the child seat using the “Top Tether” system as stated in the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat.

### WARNING

- The locking eyes have just been developed for child safety seats which use the “ISOFIX” system. You should therefore never attach other child safety seats, seat belts or objects to the locking eyes – hazard!
- Ask an authorised Škoda Service Partner whether a child seat which you bought for another vehicle is recommended for use in a Škoda before using an “ISOFIX” system.
- Certain child seats which use the “ISOFIX” system can be attached with standard three-point seat belts. Please pay close attention to instructions from the manufacturer of the child safety seat when installing and removing the seat.

### Note

- Child seats which use the “ISOFIX” system are currently available for children weighing from 9 up to 18 kg. This corresponds to an age range of from 9 months to 4 years.
- The child seats can also be fitted with the “Top Tether” system ⇒ page 109. ■

### WARNING

- Attach the child seats with the “Top Tether” system only to the points provided for this purpose ⇒ fig. 110.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.
- Pay attention to the important safety information regarding the use of child seats.

### Note

Store the remaining part of the belt for the “Top Tether” system in a textile pocket, which is located at the child seat. ■



# Driving Tips

## Intelligent Technology

### Electronic stability programme (ESP)\*

#### General




Fig. 111 ESP switch

The ESP aids you in maintaining control of your vehicle in situations in which the vehicle is driving at its dynamic limits, such as entering a curve fast. The risk of skidding is reduced and your vehicle thus offers greater driving stability depending on the conditions of the road surface. The system operates at all speeds.

The following systems are integrated into the electronic stability programme:

- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL),
- Traction control system (TCS),
- active driver-steering recommendation (DSR),
- Antilock brake system (ABS),
- Brake Assist,
- Uphill-Start off-Assist.


The ESP system cannot be switched off, only the TCS system can be switched off by pressing the button ⇒ fig. 111, the warning light  lights up.

#### Operating principle


The ESP switches on automatically when the engine is started and then conducts a self-test. The ESP control unit processes data from the individual systems. It also processes additional measurement data which are supplied by highly sensitive sensors: the rotational velocity of the vehicle about its vertical axis, the lateral acceleration of the vehicle, the braking pressure and the steering angle.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If differences exist, such as the vehicle beginning to skid, the ESP will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

The car is stabilised again by the forces which take effect when the wheel is braked. Intervention into the brake system takes place primarily on the outer front wheel of a vehicle which tends to oversteer (tendency for the rear of the vehicle to break away) while occurs this is on the inner rear wheel of a vehicle which tends to understeer (tendency to shift out of the curve). This braking control cycle is accompanied by noises.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light  flashes quickly in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 26.

The ESP operates in combination with the ABS ⇒ page 115, "Antilock brake system (ABS)". If there is a fault in the ABS system, the ESP also does not operate.

The ESP warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when there is a fault on the ESP  ⇒ page 26.

#### WARNING

**It is also not possible for the ESP to overcome the physical limits of the vehicle. Even if a vehicle fitted with ESP you should still always adapt your style of driving to the condition of the road surface and the traffic situation. This particularly applies when driving on slippery and wet roads. The increased safety**



**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

**offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!**

**i Note**

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres in order to achieve problem-free operation of the ESP. Differing rolling circumferences of the tyres can lead to an undesirable reduction in the engine output.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the ESP ⇒ page 157, "Accessories, changing and replacing parts". ■

**Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)\***

*The electronic differential lock prevents an individual wheel from slipping.*

Models fitted with ESP are equipped with electronic differential lock (EDL).

**General**

The EDL makes it much easier, and sometimes at all possible, to start off, accelerate and climb a steep hill when the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

**Operating principle**

The EDL is activated automatically, that is without any action on the part of the driver. It monitors the speeds of the driven wheels with the aid of the ABS sensors. Should only **one** drive wheel begin spinning on a slippery surface there will be an appreciable difference in the speed of the driven wheels. The EDL function brakes the slipping wheel and the differential transmits a greater driving force to the other driven wheel. This control process is also accompanied by noises.

**Overheating of the brakes**

The EDL switches off automatically if unusually severe stresses exist in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake on the wheel which is being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL.

The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Carefully depress the accelerator when accelerating on uniformly slippery road surfaces, such as ice and snow. The driven wheels might still spin despite the EDL and affect the stability of the vehicle – risk of an accident!**
- **You should always adapt your style of driving to the condition of road surface and to the traffic situation even when your vehicle is fitted with EDL. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!**

**i Note**

- If the ABS or ESP warning light comes on, this may also indicate a fault in the EDL. Please have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible by a specialist garage.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the EDL ⇒ page 157, "Accessories, changing and replacing parts". ■

**Traction control system (TCS)**

*The traction control system prevents the driven wheels from spinning when accelerating.*



Fig. 112 TCS switch


## General


The TCS makes it much easier, and sometimes at all possible, to start off, accelerate and climb a steep hill when the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

## Operating principle


The TCS switches on automatically when the engine is started and then conducts a self-test. The system monitors the speeds of the driven wheels with the aid of the ABS sensors. If the wheels are spinning, the force transmitted to the road surface is automatically adapted by reducing the engine speed. The system operates at all speeds.

The TCS operates in combination with the ABS ⇒ page 115, "Antilock brake system (ABS)". The TCS will not function if a fault exists in the ABS system.

The TCS warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when there is a fault on the TCS  ⇒ page 26.

During an intervention of the system, the TCS warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 26.

## Switching off

You can switch the TCS off and on again as you wish by pressing the button ⇒ page 112, fig. 112. The TCS warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the TCS is switched off  ⇒ page 26.

The TCS should normally always be switched on. It may be good practice in certain exceptional cases, such as when you wish to have wheel slip, to switch off the system.

Examples:

- when driving with snow chains
- when driving in deep snow or on a loose surface
- when it is necessary to rock a vehicle when it has become stuck.

then you should switch on the TCS again.

### WARNING

**You should always adjust your style of driving to the conditions of the road surface and the traffic situation. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise - risk of an accident!**

### Note

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres in order to achieve problem-free operation of the TCS. Differing rolling circumferences of the tyres can lead to an undesirable reduction in the engine output.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the TCS ⇒ page 157, "Accessories, changing and replacing parts". ■

## Active driver-steering recommendation (DSR)\*

Vehicles with ESP are equipped with active driver-steering recommendation (DSR).

This function indicates to the driver in critical situations a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The active driver-steering recommendation is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

### WARNING

**Even with this function the vehicle cannot steer itself! The driver is furthermore responsible for the steering of the vehicle! ■**

## Brakes

*What has a negative effect on braking efficiency?*

### Wear-and-tear

Wear-and-tear to the brake pads is greatly dependent on the operating conditions of the vehicle and your style of driving. Particularly if you drive a great deal in towns and over short distances or if you adopt a sporty style of driving, it may be necessary to have the thickness of the brake pads inspected at a specialist garage between the service inspections.

### Wet roads or road salt


There may be a certain delay before the brakes take full effect under certain conditions such as when driving through water, during heavy rain showers or after the vehicle has been washed in an automatic vehicle wash, since the brake discs and brake pads may ►

be moist or even have a coating of ice on them in winter. You should dry the brakes as soon as possible by applying and releasing the brakes several times.

There also may be a certain delay before the full braking efficiency is available when driving on roads which have been treated with road salt if you have not used the brakes for some considerable time beforehand. The layer of salt on the brake discs and brake pads must first be rubbed off when you apply the brakes.

### Corrosion


Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system.

We recommend cleaning the brake discs by firmly applying the brakes at a fairly high speed if you do not make much use of the braking system or if surface corrosion is present ⇒ .

### Faults in the brake surface

If you notice that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, it is possible that a brake circuit of the dual-circuit brake system has failed. Drive, in such cases, to the nearest specialist garage without delay in order to have the problem rectified. Drive at a reduced speed while on your way to the dealer and adapt your style of driving to the higher brake pedal pressure required.

### Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically ⇒ page 28, "Brake system .

### WARNING

- Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- When retrospectively mounting a front spoiler, solid wheel hubs etc. one must ensure that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced otherwise the braking system could run too hot.
- Allow for the fact that new brake pads do not achieve their full braking efficiency until after the first 200 kilometres. New brake pads must be first "run in" before they develop their optimal friction force. You can, however, compensate

### WARNING (continued)

**for this slightly reduced braking force by increasing the pressure on the brake pedal. This guideline also applies to any new brake pads installed at a future date.**

### Caution

- Never allow the brakes to rub by applying slight pressure if you do not wish to brake the vehicle. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.
- Before negotiating a steep downhill section, reduce your speed, shift down into the next lower gear. This enables you to make full use of the braking power of the vehicle and reduces the strain on the brakes. Any additional braking should be done intermittently, not continuously.

### Note

The brake light flashes automatically in case of an emergency braking at speeds greater than 60 km/h or with the intervention of the ABS, which lasts longer than 1.5 seconds. After the speed was reduced below 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again. ■

## Brake booster

The brake booster boosts the pressure which you generate with the brake pedal. The necessary pressure is only generated when the engine is running.

### WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary.
- The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort for braking is required when engine is switched off. Because if you do not stop as normal, this can cause an accident and severe injuries. ■

## Antilock brake system (ABS)

*ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking.*

### General

The ABS contributes significantly to enhancing the active safety of your vehicle. Compared to a vehicle not fitted with ABS, you are able to retain optimal steering ability even during a full brake application on a slippery road surface because the wheels do not lock up.

You must not expect, however, that the braking distance will be shorter under all circumstances as a result of the ABS. The braking distance for example on gravel and fresh snow, when you should anyway be driving slowly and cautiously, will be longer.


### Operating principle

The brake pressure will be reduced on a wheel which is rotating at a speed which is too low for the speed of the vehicle and tending to lock. This control cycle is noticeable from a **pulsating movement of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises. This is consciously intended to provide the driver with the information that the wheels are tending to lock (ABS control range). You must always keep the brake pedal depressed to enable the ABS to optimally control the brake application in this braking range. Never interrupt the application of the brakes!

#### WARNING

- **The ABS can also not overcome the physical limits of your vehicle. Please do not forget this, particularly when driving on icy or wet road surfaces. If the ABS is operating within the control range, adapt your speed immediately to the conditions of the road surface and the traffic situation. The increased safety offered by the ABS must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise - risk of an accident!**
- **The normal braking system is still fully functional if there is an ABS fault. Visit a specialist garage as quickly as possible and adjust your style of driving to take account of the ABS fault in the meantime since you will not know the extent of the fault and in how far the braking efficiency is affected.**

#### Note

- A warning light comes on if a fault occurs in the ABS system  ⇒ page 27.

- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the ABS ⇒ page 157, "Accessories, changing and replacing parts". ■

## Brake Assist\*

During a severe brake application (e.g. if a hazard exists), the Brake Assist increases the braking force and thus makes it possible to rapidly produce the pressure required in the brake system.

The majority of drivers do apply the brakes in good time in dangerous situations, but do not depress the brake pedal with sufficient pressure. Consequently, it is not possible for the vehicle to achieve its maximum deceleration and the vehicle covers a greater distance than necessary.

The Brake Assist is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. In such cases, a much greater braking pressure exists than during a normal brake application. This makes it possible, even with a relatively low resistance of the brake pedal, to produce an adequate pressure in the brake system in the shortest possible time, which is required for maximum deceleration of the car. You must apply the brake pedal firmly and hold it in this position in order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance.

The Brake Assist is able to help you achieve a shorter braking distance in emergency situations by rapidly producing the pressure required in the brake system. It fully exploits the attributes of the ABS. After you release the brake pedal, the function of the Brake Assist is automatically switched off and the brakes operate in the normal way.

The Brake Assist is part of the ESP system. If a fault occurs in the ESP, the Brake Assist function is also not available. Further information on the ESP ⇒ page 111.

#### WARNING



- **The Brake Assist is also not able to overcome the physical limits of your vehicle in terms of the braking distance required.**
- **Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.**
- **The increased safety offered by the Brake Assist must not tempt you to take a greater safety risk than otherwise.** ■

## Electromechanical power steering

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

With the electromechanical power steering, the steering assist is automatically adapted to the speed and to the steering angle.

It is still possible to fully steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (vehicle being towed in). The only difference is that greater physical effort is required.

If there is a fault in the power steering, the warning light  or  lights up in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 24.




### WARNING

Contact your specialist garage if the power steering is defective. ■

## Tyre inflation pressure-control system\*



Fig. 113 Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value





The tyre inflation pressure-control system compares with the aid of the ABS sensors the speed and also the rolling circumference of the individual wheels. If the rolling circumference of a wheel is changed, the warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 27 and an audible signal sounds. The rolling circumference of the tyre can change if:

- the tyre inflation pressure is too low,
- the structure of the tyre is damaged,



- the vehicle is loaded on one side,
- the wheels of an axle are loaded heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill),
- snow chains are mounted,
- the temporary spare wheel is mounted,
- one wheel per axle was changed.

### Basic setting of tyre inflation pressure-control system

After changing the tyre inflation pressures, after changing one or several wheels, the position of a wheel on the vehicle (e.g. exchanging the wheels between the axles) or when the warning light lights up while driving, a basic setting of the system must be carried out as follows.

- Inflate all tyres to the specified inflation pressure ⇒ page 130.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Press button  ⇒ fig. 113 for more than 2 seconds. While pressing the button, the warning light  lights up. At the same time the memory of the system is erased and the new calibration is started, which is confirmed with an audible signal and then the warning light  goes out.
- If the warning light  does not go out after the basic setting, there is a fault in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by your nearest specialist garage.

### Warning light lights up


If the tyre inflation pressure of at least one wheel is insufficiently inflated in comparison to the stored basic value, the warning light  ⇒  lights up.


### Warning light flashes


If the warning light flashes, there is a system fault. Have the vehicle inspected by your nearest specialist garage.



### WARNING

- When the warning light  lights up, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Please stop the vehicle without delay at the nearest possible stop and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressures.

 **WARNING (continued)**

- **The driver is responsible for the correct tyre inflation pressure. For this reason, the tyre inflation pressures must be checked regularly.**
- **Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light  can be delayed or does not light up at all.**
- **The tyre inflation pressure-control system does not take away the responsibility from the driver for the correct tyre inflation pressure.**

 **Note**

The tyre inflation pressure-control system:

- does not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, because the system cannot detect an even pressure loss,
- cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements and without sharp braking.
- In order to ensure a proper functioning of the tyre inflation pressure-control system, it is necessary to carry out the basic setting again every 10 000 km or 1x a year. ■

## Driving and the Environment

### The first 1 500 kilometres and then afterwards

#### A new engine

---

*The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.*

#### Up to 1 000 kilometres

- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, that is 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- Do not use full throttle.
- Avoid high engine revolutions.
- Do not tow a trailer.

#### From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres

- Increase the power output of the engine **gradually** up to the full speed of the gear engaged, that is up to the maximum permissible engine revolutions.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx. 1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your vehicle.

You should not drive at unnecessarily **high engine revolutions** even after the running-in period is complete. The maximum permissible engine speed is marked by the beginning of the red zone on the scale of the revolutions counter. Before reaching the red zone at the latest, shift up into the next highest gear. **Extremely** high engine revolutions are automatically governed, by the way.

Do not drive at engine revolutions which are **too low**. Shift down as soon as the engine is no longer running smoothly.

#### Caution

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature. Never rev up an engine which is cold, neither when the vehicle is stationary nor when driving in individual gears.



#### For the sake of the environment

Not driving at unnecessarily high engine revolutions and shifting to a higher gear as early as possible are ways to minimise fuel consumption and operating noise levels and protects the environment. ■

#### New tyres

---

New tyres have to be “run in” since they do not offer optimal grip at first. You should take account of this fact for the first 500 kilometres and drive particularly carefully. ■

#### New brake pads

---

Allow for the fact that new brake pads do not achieve their full braking efficiency until after the first 200 kilometres. New brake pads must be first “run in” before they develop their optimal friction force. You can, however, compensate for this slightly reduced braking force by increasing the pressure on the brake pedal.

This guideline also applies to any new brake pads installed at a future date.

During the running-in period, you should avoid excessive stresses on the brakes. This includes, for example, violent braking, particularly from very high speeds, and also when crossing mountain passes. ■

## Catalytic converter

*Proper operation of the emission control system (catalytic converter) is of major significance for driving your vehicle in an environmentally conscious way.*

Please refer to the following guidelines:

- For vehicles with petrol engine only refuel with unleaded petrol ⇒ page 136, “Grades of petrol”.
- Never run the fuel tank completely empty.
- Do not switch off the ignition while you are driving the vehicle.
- Do not pour too much engine oil into the engine ⇒ page 142, “Replenishing engine oil”.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle over a distance of more than 50 metres ⇒ page 167, “Tow-starting and towing vehicle”.

If you drive your vehicle in a country in which unleaded petrol is not available, you must have the catalytic converter replaced later when driving the vehicle into a country in which use of a catalytic converter is mandatory.

### WARNING

- **In view of the high temperatures which may be produced in the catalytic converter, one should always park a vehicle in such a way that the catalytic converter cannot come into contact with easily flammable materials below the vehicle – a risk of fire!**
- **Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. Such substances might ignite when driving – risk of fire!**

### Caution

- Vehicles fitted with catalytic converter should never be allowed to let the fuel tank to run completely empty. An irregular fuel supply can result in poor ignition or misfiring. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

- Filling the tank even only once with leaded petrol will result in the catalytic converter being destroyed.
- If you detect misfiring, a drop in performance or irregular engine running when driving, reduce your speed immediately and have the vehicle inspected by the nearest specialist garage. The symptoms described may be caused by a fault in the ignition system. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.



### For the sake of the environment

Even if the exhaust system is operating properly, a sulphur-like exhaust odour may be produced under certain operating conditions of the engine. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel. It is often sufficient to refuel with unleaded premium-grade petrol of a different brand or at a different filling station. ■

## Driving in an economical and environmentally conscious manner

### General

*Your personal style of driving is a major factor.*

Your fuel consumption, any pollution of the environmental and the wear-and-tear to the engine, brakes and tyres, depend essentially on three factors:

- your personal style of driving,
- the conditions under which your vehicle is operated,
- technical aspects.

You can easily improve your fuel economy by 10 – 15 percent by driving in an economical way with foresight. This section is intended to provide you with a number of tips on how to protect the environment and at the same time save money.

The fuel consumption can naturally also be influenced by factors which are beyond the driver's control. It is, for example, normal for the fuel consumption to increase in winter and under worsened conditions such as poor road conditions, towing a trailer, etc. ►



The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. Special attention has been given to minimising negative effects on the environment. It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle. ■

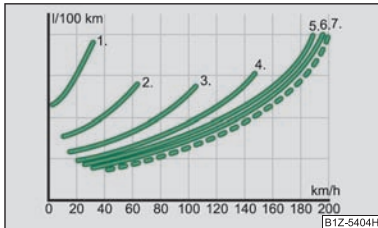
### Looking ahead when driving

*A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs it accelerates.*

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily. If you drive with foresight you will not need to brake so often and will also then not have to accelerate so much. Let your vehicle coast to a stop, for example, if this is possible, when you see that the next set of traffic lights is at red. ■

### Shifting gears and saving energy

*Shifting up early saves on fuel.*



**Fig. 114 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.**

- Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
- Always shift up into the next higher gear at approx. 2 000 to 2 500 revs.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. You will consume more fuel if you drive at unnecessarily high revolutions in any given gear.

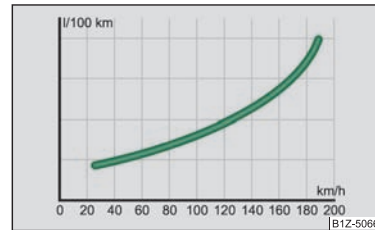
The ⇒ fig. 114 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle in the relevant gears. Fuel consumption in 1st gear is the highest, while that in 5th or the 6th gear is the lowest.

### Note

Also use the information supplied by the multi-functional indicator\* ⇒ page 18. ■

### Avoiding full throttle

*Driving more slowly means saving fuel.*



**Fig. 115 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.**

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

You should avoid exploiting the top speed of your vehicle wherever possible. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionately at high speeds.

The ⇒ fig. 115 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. You will cut your fuel consumption by half if you only make use three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle. ■

## Reducing idling

### *Idling also costs fuel.*

It is worthwhile switching off the engine in a traffic jam or when waiting at a level crossing or at traffic lights with a lengthy red phase. Even after just 30 - 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. This is why you should drive off right after starting the engine. Do avoid high engine revolutions at this time, however. ■

## Regular servicing

### *A poorly tuned engine consumes an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.*

Having your vehicle serviced regularly at a specialist garage enables you to satisfy **one** of the requirements for economical motoring even before you set off on your journey. Keeping your vehicle properly serviced not only has a positive effect on the safety of your vehicle and maintaining its value, but also saves on **fuel**.

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal.

The foreseen maintenance work should be undertaken exactly according to the Service schedule by a specialist garage.

Also check the **oil level** after refuelling. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. It is therefore not possible to correctly assess the oil consumption of a new vehicle until after you have driven about 5 000 km.



### For the sake of the environment

- You can achieve additional improvements in your fuel economy by using high-lubricity oils.

- Check the ground below your vehicle at regular intervals to detect any leakages in good time. Please have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the floor. ■

## Avoid driving short distances

### *Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption.*

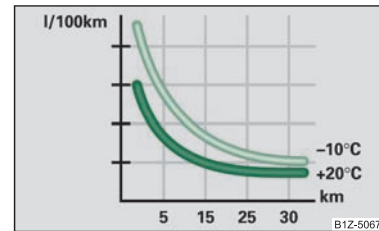


Fig. 116 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km at different temperatures

- Avoid driving a distance of no more than 4 km if the engine is cold.

The engine and catalytic converter must first have reached their optimal **operating temperature** in order to effectively reduce fuel consumption and pollutant emissions.

The cold engine vehicle consumes approx. 15 - 20 litres/100 km of fuel immediately after starting. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The engine reaches its operating temperature (outside temperature and engine dependent) only after about **4 to 10** kilometres and the fuel consumption then stabilizes. You should therefore avoid driving short distances whenever possible.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The ⇒ fig. 116 shows the different fuel consumptions for the same distance, on the one hand at +20 °C and on the other hand at -10 °C. Your vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer. ■

## Checking tyre inflation pressures

*Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.*

Always ensure that your tyres are inflated to the correct pressure at all times. The rolling resistance will be increased if the inflation pressure is too low. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the inflation pressure of the tyres when **cold**.

Do not drive with **winter tyres** all year round for this costs about 10 % more fuel. Winter tyres are also louder. ■

## No unnecessary ballast

*Transporting ballast costs fuel.*

The fact that every kilogram of extra **weight** increases your fuel consumption means that it is worth taking a look in the luggage compartment to avoid transporting any unnecessary ballast.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

You may frequently also leave a **roof rack fitted** on just out of convenience, although you no longer need it. The increased aerodynamic drag of your vehicle causes it to use about 10 % more fuel than normal at a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, even when you are not carrying a load on the roof. ■

## Saving electricity

*Generating electricity costs fuel.*

- Switch off electrical components as soon as you no longer need them.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. The greater the load on the alternator as a result of having a large number of electrical components switched on, the more fuel will be consumed for operating the alternator. ■

## Keeping a log of your fuel consumption

If you really wish to keep a close check on your **fuel consumption**, it is best to enter the figures in a logbook. This does not take much time but is a very worthwhile exercise. It enables you to detect any change (positive and negative) at an early stage and to take any appropriate action.

If you find that your fuel consumption is too high, you should reflect on how, where and in what conditions you have driven the vehicle since you last refuelled. ■

## Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, selection of materials and manufacture of your new Skoda. Particular emphasis has been paid to a number of aspects, including:

### Design measures

- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation<sup>o</sup>260.
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO<sub>2</sub>.
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- Reduced noise.

### Choice of materials

- Extensive use of recyclable material.
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- No cadmium.
- No asbestos.
- Reduction in the “vaporisation” of plastics.

### Manufacture

- Solvent-free cavity protection.



- Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- No CFCs used in the production process.
- Without use of mercury.
- Use of water-soluble paints.

### Trade-in and recycling of old cars

Škoda Auto meets the requirements of the brand and its products regarding environment and resource protection. All new Škoda vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always <sup>5)</sup> be returned. In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

### Vehicles with special built-on types

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to hand over later to the old car user. This ensures the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.



#### Note

Detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars is available from a Škoda Service Partner. ■

## Motoring abroad

### General

*Other circumstances may exist abroad.*

It is possible, in certain countries, that the Škoda Service Partner network is limited or has not been established yet. This is the reason why obtaining certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garage personnel may only be able to make limited repairs. Škoda Auto in the Czech Republic and relevant importers are happy to

<sup>5)</sup> Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

provide information about technical aspects of the vehicle, required maintenance work and possibilities for getting repairs done. ■

### Unleaded petrol

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol ⇒ page 119. The automobile associations can provide you with information regarding the locations of filling stations which offer unleaded petrol. ■

### Headlight

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which you are driving to a greater extent. If you drive abroad on the other side of the road, you will dazzle oncoming traffic.

In order to prevent the dazzling of oncoming traffic, it is necessary that an adjustment of the headlights is carried out by your authorised Škoda Service Partner. ■

## Avoiding damage to your vehicle

When driving on poor roads and lanes or when driving over kerbstones, steep ramps etc., you must pay particular attention to ensuring that any low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as spoiler and exhaust, do not touch the ground and get damaged.

This particularly applies to models with a lowered suspension (sport suspension) and also when your vehicle is fully laden. ■

## Driving through bodies of water on roads

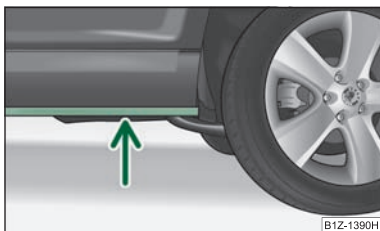


Fig. 117 Crossing bodies of water

In order to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads), observe the following:

- Determine the depth of the water when driving through bodies of water. The water can reach at the maximum the web on the lower sill of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 117.
- Drive no more than at walking speed. At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.
- Never let the vehicle stand in the water, never drive backwards and do not switch off the engine.



### WARNING

- **Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can reduce the braking power and extend the braking distance – risk of accident!**
- **Avoid sudden and severe braking manoeuvres immediately after driving through bodies of water.**
- **After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.**



### Caution

- When driving through bodies of water, parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, catalytic converter, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Immediately rinse all the parts of the vehicle, which came into contact with the salt water, with fresh water.



### Note

After driving through a body of water, we recommend that the vehicle is checked by a specialist garage. ■

## Towing a trailer

### Towing a trailer

#### Technical requirements

Your vehicle is designed primarily for transporting persons and luggage. It can, however, also be used for towing a trailer - provided certain technical equipment is fitted.

If your vehicle has already been supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing device then everything that is necessary for towing a trailer in technical terms, and in terms of the law, has already been taken into account.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer which you wish to tow has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter<sup>6)</sup> from Škoda original accessories.

This work must be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications if a towing device is retrofitted.

Authorised Škoda Service Partners can provide information about retrofitting a towing device and for any necessary modifications to the cooling system.

#### WARNING

**We recommend that you have the towing device from Škoda original accessories installed by an authorised Škoda Service Partner. He is familiar with all the relevant details relating to retrofitting such equipment. There is a risk of an accident if the towing device is not properly fitted! ■**

#### General Maintenance

##### Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must on no account be exceeded.

<sup>6)</sup> In some countries the adapter is supplied with the towing device.

You can negotiate appropriately steeper inclines and descents if you do not make full use of the permissible trailer load.

The trailer loads specified only apply for **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level. The fact that the engine power output drops with increasing height due to a lowering of air pressure and thus the ability to climb, means that the towed weight must be reduced by 10 % for every further increase of 1 000 metres in height above sea level. The towed weight is the weight of the (laden) vehicle and the (laden) trailer together. One should take this into account before driving up to higher altitudes.

**The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device are merely test data for the towing device. The data relating to your vehicle, which is often less than this test data, can be found in your vehicle registration documents.**

##### Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that any heavy items are located as close as possible to the axle. Secure the items to prevent them slipping.

##### Tyre inflation pressure

Select the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for that of "fully laden", ⇒ page 151. The inflation pressure of the tyres fitted to the trailer adjust in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

##### Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. Both exterior mirrors should be attached to folding arms. Adjust the mirrors so that they provide you with an adequate field of view to the rear.

##### Headlights

Before starting off with a hitched trailer, also check the setting of the headlights. Alter the setting as necessary with the aid of the headlight beam adjuster ⇒ page 43.

##### Detachable ball head

The ball rod is detachable on vehicles which feature a factory-fitted towing device. ►

Further information on the towing device ⇒ page 126.



### Note

- We recommend that you also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals if you tow a trailer frequently.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be put on when coupling and decoupling the trailer. ■

## Driving Tips

*Particular caution is required when towing a trailer.*

- Do not, as far as possible, drive with your vehicle unladen and the trailer laden.
- Do not make full use of the legal maximum speeds. This applies in particular to downhill sections.
- Apply the brakes in good time.
- Keep a check on the coolant temperature gauge if the outside temperature is high.

### Distribution of weight

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

### Driving speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/hour for safety reasons. This also applies for countries in which higher speeds are allowed.

The fact that the driving stability of the vehicle + trailer combination reduces with increasing speed means that the legally allowed speed should not be used when there are unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions, particularly near accident black spots.


You must always reduce your speed immediately as soon as you detect even just the **slightest swaying** of the trailer. On no account attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.


Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first and then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the

trailer wheels locking. Shift down gears in good time before negotiating a downhill section to allow the engine to also act as a brake.

### Engine overheating

Please keep a check on the coolant temperature gauge if you have to negotiate a lengthy slope in a low gear at a high engine speed when the outside temperature is very high ⇒ page 16, "Engine coolant temperature Display".

If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or even the red area of the scale, reduce your speed immediately. Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light  in the instrument cluster begins flashing. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle ⇒ page 143, "Inspecting the coolant level".

Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 25, "Coolant temperature/coolant level ".

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

Any increase in the cooling effect of the coolant fan through shifting down a gear and increasing the engine speed is not possible since the fan speed is independent of the engine speed. One should also not drop a gear for this reason when towing a trailer as long as the engine can manage the slope without any drop in speed. ■

## Detachable towing device\*

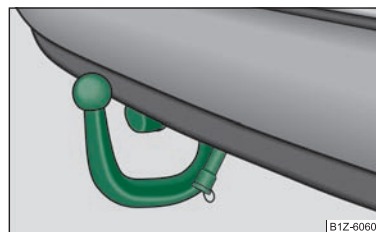


Fig. 118 Detachable ball head

The ball head of the towing device is stowed together with separate fitting instructions in the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment of the vehicle. ►

Inspect the ball head to ensure that it is properly locked each time before setting off. The inspection is performed by turning the closed locking lever downwards. If the locking lever can only be turned around a small angle (approx. 5°), the locking mechanism is O.K. After the inspection pull the locking lever back again to its stop. The towing device must not be used, if it does not wish to close or the locking lever turns slightly in the closed position.

 **WARNING**

**Do not use any aids or tools for installing or removing the ball head. This might result in damage to the locking mechanism to the extent that the safety of the towing device is no longer assured - risk of an accident.**

 **Note**

- Do not carry out any modifications or repairs to the ball head or to any other components on the towing device.
- Contact a specialist garage if you encounter any problems using the device.
- Never unlock the ball head with a trailer coupled to it.
- You should take off the ball head if you drive without towing a trailer. Inspect whether the end cover properly seals off the mounting shaft.
- Remove the ball head beforehand if you wish to clean your vehicle using a steam jet. Ensure that the end cover properly seals the mounting shaft.
- It is recommended to wear gloves when installing and removing. ■





## General Maintenance

### Taking care of your vehicle and cleaning the vehicle

#### General

*Proper care retains the value of your vehicle.*

Regular and proper care retains **the value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer. Please follow the instructions for use on the package.

#### WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store care products in a safe place, out of the reach of children - risk of poisoning!



#### For the sake of the environment

- Always select environmentally-friendly products when purchasing vehicle care products.
- Do not dispose of the packages with residues of care products in domestic waste. ■

### Care of the exterior of vehicle

#### Washing the vehicle

*Frequent washing protects your vehicle.*

The best protection for your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing and wax treatment. How often you should wash your vehicle depends on a wide range of factors, such as:

- Frequency of use,
- The parking situation (garage, below trees etc.),
- Season of the year,
- Weather conditions,
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It may therefore be necessary, in certain circumstances, to wash the car **once a week**. It may also be sufficient, however, to wash the car **once a month** followed by appropriate wax treatment.

It is essential to also thoroughly wash the **underside of your vehicle** at the end of the winter road salting and gritting period.

#### WARNING

**When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency - risk of accident! ■**

#### Automatic vehicle wash systems

The paintwork of the vehicle is sufficiently resistant that the vehicle can be washed normally in automatic vehicle wash plants without any problem. The actual stress to which the paintwork is subjected, however, depends greatly on the design of the vehicle wash system, the filtering of the water and the type of washing and care products used. If the paintwork of your vehicle appears mat after being washed or even has scratches, point this out to the operator of the vehicle wash plant. Use a different vehicle wash plant, if necessary. ▶

There are no particular points to note before washing your vehicle in an automatic vehicle wash system other than the usual precautionary measures (closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If you have any particular attached parts fitted to your car – such as spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial – it is best to first of all consult the operator of the car wash plant.

It is important to degrease the lips of the windscreen wiper rubbers after passing through the automatic vehicle wash system. ■

### Washing vehicle by hand

It is important to first soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse it off as thoroughly as possible before washing your vehicle by hand.

One should then clean the vehicle using a soft **washing sponge**, **washing glove** or a **washing brush** and only slight pressure. Work from the top to the bottom – beginning with the roof. Only place slight pressure on the vehicle paintwork during cleaning. Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Rinse off the vehicle well after giving it a wash and dry it off using a chamois leather.

#### WARNING

- **The ignition should always be switched off when you wash your vehicle – risk of accident!**
- **Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when you are cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts.**

#### Caution

- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.
- Ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or at the door and panel joints if you spray your vehicle in winter down with a hose – risk of freezing.

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damage to the surface of paintwork.



#### For the sake of the environment

Only wash your vehicle at washing bays specifically reserved for this purpose. This ensures that no water which may be contaminated by oil flows into the sewage system. It is not even permitted to wash your vehicle in certain areas except at such specific washing bays. ■

### Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

When you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, it is essential to comply with the instructions for use of the cleaning equipment. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**. Maintain a sufficiently large distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

On no account use **circular spray nozzles** or so-called **dirt cutters!**

#### WARNING

**It is particularly important that you do not clean tyres with circular spray jets. Visible but also invisible damage to tyres may occur even at a relatively large spraying distance and if sprayed only for a short time – risk of accident!**

#### Caution

The water containing wax must be no hotter than 60 °C, otherwise the vehicle can be damaged. ■

### Wax treatment

Good wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences and minor mechanical damage.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork. ▶

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly. Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

### ⚠ Caution

Never apply wax to the windows. ■

## Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paintwork of your vehicle has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservers.

You must treat the paintwork with a wax preserver if the polish you use does not contain any preserving elements ⇒ page 130.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

### ⚠ Caution

- You must not treat mat painted parts or plastic with polishing products or hard wax.
- Do not polish the paintwork of the vehicle in a dusty environment, otherwise the paintwork can be scratched. ■

## Chrome parts

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth. If it does not prove to be adequate, use a chrome care product from Škoda original accessories.

### ⚠ Caution

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment, otherwise they can be scratched. ■

## Paint damage

Slight damage to paintwork such as scratches, scuffs or traces of chip damage must be touched up immediately with paint (Škoda painting pen) **before** any corrosion can result. You can of course have this work carried out by authorised Škoda Service Partners.

The authorised Škoda Service Partners have a range of matching **touch-up pens** or **spray cans** available in the colour of your vehicle.

The paint number of the original paintwork of your vehicle is indicated on the vehicle data sticker ⇒ page 179.

Any corrosion which has already have formed must be removed thoroughly. Apply a **corrosion protection primer** and then the paint to the affected point. You can of course have this work carried out by authorised Škoda Service Partners. ■

## Plastic parts

External plastic parts are cleaned by normal washing. Plastic parts and synthetic leather can also be treated with **special solvent-free plastic cleaning agents** if a damp cloth is not sufficient. Paint care products are not suitable for plastic parts.

### ⚠ Caution

Solvent-free cleaners attack the material and can damage it. ■

## Windows

Only use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. You should not move the ice scraper forward and backward but in one direction on the window which you are cleaning in order to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.

You can best remove residues of rubber, oil, grease, wax or silicone by using a special window cleaner or a special silicone remover.

You should also clean the windows regularly from the inside. ►

Do not use window leathers which you have used to polish the vehicle body to dry off the windows. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.

Do not affix any stickers over the inside of the rear window to avoid damage to the **heating elements of the rear window heater**.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

### Caution

Never remove snow or ice from the glass parts with warm or hot water - risk of formation of cracks in the glass! ■

## The headlight lenses

---

Please do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products for cleaning the front headlights - risk of damage to the plastic lenses. **Please use** soap and clean warm water.

### Caution

**Never** wipe the headlights dry and do not use any sharp objects for cleaning the plastic lenses, this may result in damage to the protective paintwork and consequently in formation of cracks on the headlight lenses, e.g. through effect of chemical products. ■

## Door and window seals

---

The rubber seals on the doors, boot lid, bonnet and windows remain supple and last longer if you treat them from time to time with a rubber care product (e.g. with a spray with silicone-free oil). You also avoid premature wear of the seals and prevent leakages in this way. It is also easier to open the doors. Rubber seals which are well cared for also do not stick together in cold winter weather. ■

## Locking cylinder

---

We recommend that you use the spray from Škoda original accessories with regreasing and anticorrosive effect for de-icing locking cylinders.

### Note

When washing your vehicle, ensure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders. ■

## Wheels

---

### Steel wheels

You should also thoroughly wash the wheels and wheel trims when giving your vehicle its regular wash. This prevents any brake dust, dirt and road salt from sticking to the wheel hubs. You can remove stubborn brake abrasion adhering to the wheels with an industrial cleaner. Touch up any damage to the paintwork on the wheels before rust is able to form.

### Light alloy wheels

Regular care of light alloy wheels is necessary in order to retain their decorative appearance over long periods. It is particularly important to remove regularly any road salt and brake abrasion from light alloy wheels, otherwise the light metal will suffer. Wash thoroughly and then treat the wheels with a protective product for light alloy wheels which does not contain any acidic components. We recommend to apply a hard wax layer onto the wheel hubs every three months. You must not use any products which cause abrasion when treating the wheel hubs. Any damage to the paint layer on the wheel hubs must be touched up immediately.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

### WARNING

**One should remember when cleaning the wheels that moisture, ice and road salt may adversely affect braking efficiency - risk of an accident!**

### Note

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt. ■

## Underbody protection

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

One cannot, however, completely rule out damage to the **protective layer** when driving so we recommend that you inspect the protective layer on the underside of your vehicle and on the chassis at certain intervals - this is best done at the beginning and end of the winter - and to touch up any damaged areas.

The authorised Škoda Service Partners have suitable **spray products** available as well as the necessary equipment and are familiar with the instructions for use. It is therefore best to have such touch-up work or additional corrosion protection measures carried out by an authorised Škoda Service Partner.

### WARNING

**Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite - risk of fire! ■**

## Protection of hollow spaces

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated. Please remove any small amount of wax which flows out of the cavities at high temperatures with a plastic scraper and clean the spot using petroleum cleaner.

### WARNING

**Safety and environmental protection regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax - a risk of fire! ■**

## Engine compartment

Good corrosion protection is very important, particularly in winter when one often drives over its salt-strewn roads. One should therefore clean the whole engine

compartment before and after the salt spreading period and treat with preservative in order to prevent the salt from being destructive.

The authorised Škoda Service Partners have the cleaning agents and preservatives recommended by Škoda and also the required equipment.

### WARNING

- **It is necessary to observe the guidelines given in the chapter before working on the engine compartment ⇒ page 140, "Working in the engine compartment".**
- **Let the engine cool down before cleaning the engine compartment.**

### Caution

- Engine cleaning may be only be undertaken when the ignition is off.
- It is recommended to cover the generator before washing the engine compartment.



### For the sake of the environment

The dirty water produced by washing the engine has washed away petrol, and residues of grease and oil and should therefore be cleaned by an oil separator. This is why engine washing should only be undertaken in a specialist garage or at a fuelling station (when these are fitted with the required equipment). ■

## Care of the interior of vehicle

### Plastic parts, artificial leather and cloths

You can clean plastic parts and artificial leather with a moist cloth. You should only treat such parts with special **solvent-free plastic cleaning and care products** it does prove to be adequate.

Upholstery cloth and cloth trim on the doors, luggage compartment cover, headliner etc. are best treated with special cleaning products, using if necessary a **dry foam** and a soft sponge or brush. ▶

We recommend using a cleaning product from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

### Caution

Solvent-free cleaners attack the material and can damage it. ■

## Fabric covers of electrically heated seats

Do **not clean** the seat covers moist as this may result in damage to the seat heating system.

Clean such covers using special agents, for example dry foam. ■

## Natural leather

*Natural leather requires quite particular care and attention.*

Leather should be treated from time to time according the following guidelines depending on how much it is used.

### Normal cleaning

- Clean soiled areas of the leather with slightly moistened cotton or woollen cloth.

### Severe soiling

- Clean severely soiled areas with a cloth dipped in a mild soapy solution (2 spoonfuls of natural soap to 1 litre of water).
- Ensure that the leather is not soaked through at any point and that no water gets into the stitching of the seams.
- Dry off the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

### Removing stains

- Remove fresh stains which are **water-based** (e.g. coffee, tea, juices, blood etc.) with an absorbent cloth or household paper or use the cleaner from the care set for a stain which has already dried in.

- Remove fresh stains on a **fat base** (e.g. butter, mayonnaise, chocolate etc.) with an absorbent cloth or household cleaning paper or with the cleaner from the care set if the stain has not yet penetrated into the surface.
- Use a grease dissolver for **grease stains which have dried in**.
- Eliminate **special stains** (e.g. ball-point pens, felt pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream etc.) with a special stain remover suitable for leather.

## Leather care

- Treat the leather every six months with the leather care product available from an authorised Škoda Service Partner.
- Apply only a small amount of the care product.
- Dry the leather off with a soft cloth

It is best to consult an authorised Škoda Service Partner if you have any questions regarding cleaning and care of the leather interior in your vehicle.

### Caution

- You must on no account treat the leather with solvents (e.g. gasoline, turpentine), floor wax, shoe cream or such like.
- Avoid leaving your vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight in order to avoid bleaching the leather. If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from the direct rays of the sun by covering it over.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface.

### Note

- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect regularly and each time after cleaning the leather. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Clean the leather every 2 to 3 months, remove fresh soiling each time this occurs.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe cream etc., as quickly as possible. ▶

- Care also for the leather dye. Refreshen areas which have lost their colour with a special coloured leather cream as required.
- The leather is a natural material with specific properties. During the use of the vehicle, minor optical changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers). ■

## Seat belts

---

- Keep the seat belts clean!
- Wash seat belts which have become soiled using a mild soapy solution.
- Inspect the seat belts regularly to ensure they are in good condition.

Belt webbing which has become severely soiled may prevent the inertia reel from reeling up the belt properly.

### WARNING

- **The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.**
- **Never clean the seat belts chemically as dry cleaning may destroy the fabric. The seat belts must also not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (such as acids etc.).**
- **Seat belts which have damage to the webbing, the connections, the inertia reel or the lock should be replaced by an authorised Škoda Service Partner.**
- **Inertia reel belts must be completely dried before being reeled up. ■**



## Fuel

### Petrol

#### Grades of petrol

---

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol**, which complies with the standard **EN 228**. The individual grades of petrol are distinguished by their octane number (RON). On the inside of the fuel filler flap, you will find the information regarding the octane number required by your engine ⇒ page 137, fig. 119 - right.

#### Prescribed types of fuel - unleaded petrol RON 95/91

Use unleaded petrol **95** RON. You can also use unleaded RON **91**. However some loss of power is to be expected when doing so.

If, in an emergency, the only fuel available is one which has a lower octane number than that required by the engine then only drive at medium engine speeds and minimal engine load. Driving at high engine speeds or heavy engine loads can lead to serious engine damage! Refuel with petrol with the specified octane number as often as possible.

#### Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded petrol **95** RON.

If unleaded RON **95** is not available, you can refuel with unleaded RON **91** in an emergency. After refuelling, continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load. Driving at high engine speeds or heavy engine loads can lead to serious engine damage! Refuel with petrol with the specified octane number as often as possible.

Fuel with a lower octane number than RON **91** must not be used even in an emergency. Otherwise you can cause serious engine damage!

You can find further information on refuelling ⇒ page 137, "Refuelling".

#### Prescribed types of fuel - unleaded petrol RON 98/(95)

Use unleaded petrol **98** RON. You can also use unleaded RON **95**. However some loss of power is to be expected when doing so.

If unleaded RON **98** or RON **95** is not available, you can refuel with unleaded RON **91** in an emergency. After refuelling, continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load. Driving at high engine speeds or heavy engine loads can lead to serious engine damage! Refuel with petrol with the specified octane number as often as possible.

Fuel with a lower octane number than RON **91** must not be used even in an emergency. Otherwise you can cause serious engine damage!

You can find further information on refuelling ⇒ page 137, "Refuelling".

#### Unleaded petrol with a higher octane number

You can use unleaded petrol which has a higher octane number than the one prescribed without restriction.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol RON **95/91**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol RON **95/91**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

#### Caution

- All Skoda vehicles with petrol engines are equipped with a catalytic converter and must be only driven with unleaded petrol. Filling the tank even only once with leaded petrol will result in the catalytic converter being destroyed!
- Only use unleaded petrol which complies with the standard **EN 228**.
- Operating the engine with petrol of a lower octane number than that prescribed can result in serious engine damage. ■

## Diesel

### Diesel fuel

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel**, which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria).

#### Fuel additives

You must not use fuel additives, so-called “flow improvers” (petrol and similar products) in diesel fuel.

You can find information on refuelling ⇒ page 137, “Refuelling”.

#### ⚠ Caution

- Therefore, only operate your vehicle with diesel fuel which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria). Filling the tank even only once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard can result in damage to the engine parts, the lubrication system, the fuel and exhaust system.
- If you inadvertently fill up the vehicle with fuel other than the prescribed diesel fuel, e.g. petrol, do not under any circumstances start the engine or turn on the ignition. Extensive engine damage is possible! Contact a specialist garage who will clean out the fuel system.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can result in engine problems.
- Your vehicle is not adapted for use of bio-diesel (RME), therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. Using this biodiesel can lead to damage to the engine or the fuel system. ■

### Operation in winter

#### Winter-grade diesel fuel

A different grade of diesel fuel is available at filling stations in winter than during the summer. Using “summer-grade diesel fuel” at temperatures below 0 °C can result in operational problems because the diesel becomes viscous as a result of paraffin separation.

It is therefore the case that the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria) is the diesel fuel class prescribed for certain periods of the year which can also be purchased at the corresponding time during the year. “Winter-grade diesel fuel” will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. The authorised Škoda Service Partners and filling stations in the country concerned will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

#### Prewarming fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter prewarming system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

#### ⚠ Caution

It is not permitted to add the various fuel additives on the market, including petrol, to diesel fuel in order to improve its flow properties. ■

## Refuelling

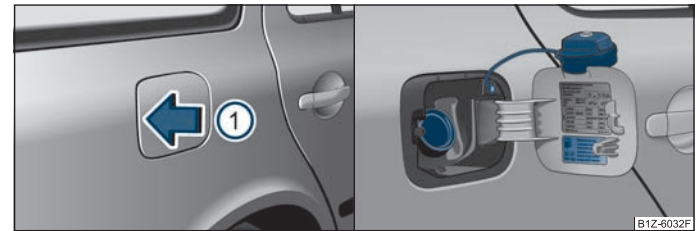


Fig. 119 Right rear side of the vehicle: Open fuel filler flap/fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed

#### Opening the fuel filler cap

- Press in the middle of the left area of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow ① ⇒ fig. 119.
- Unlock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube to the left using the vehicle key. ▶

- Unscrew the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise and place the fuel filler cap from above on the fuel filler flap ⇒ page 137, fig. 119 - right.

### Closing fuel filler cap

- Screw on the fuel filler cap by turning it to the right until it is heard to click.
- Lock the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube by turning the vehicle key to the right and withdraw the key.
- Close the fuel filler flap until it locks.

The correct grade of fuel for your vehicle as well as the tyre size and inflation pressures are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. Further information on fuel ⇒ page 136.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres.



### WARNING

**Pay attention to any legal requirements if you do carry a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. The canister can be damaged in the event of an accident and fuel may leak out.**



### Caution

- Remove any fuel which has spilled onto the paintwork of your vehicle immediately - risk of paint damage!
- Vehicles fitted with catalytic converter should never be allowed to let the fuel tank to run completely empty. An irregular supply of fuel to the engine can result in misfiring and unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system, which may result in overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.
- Make sure that the valve is not pressed into the filler tube when inserting the pump nozzle into the filler tube. Otherwise you are unintentionally filling up the volume, which in case of heat can cause an expansion of the fuel. This can lead to an overflow of fuel or damage to parts of the fuel reservoir.
- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue refuelling - otherwise the expansion volume is filled up. ■

## Inspecting and replenishing

### Engine compartment

#### Bonnet remote release

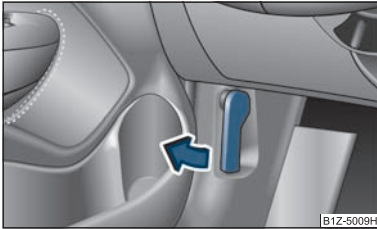


Fig. 120 Bonnet release lever

#### Bonnet remote release

- Pull the unlocking lever below the dash panel on the driver's side ⇒ fig. 120.

The bonnet jumps out of its lock as a result of the spring force. A locking lever appears at the same time in the radiator grille. ■

#### Opening and closing the bonnet.



Fig. 121 Radiator grille: Release lever / securing the bonnet with the bonnet support

#### Opening the bonnet

- Unlock the bonnet ⇒ fig. 120.
- Ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen **before opening** the bonnet otherwise damage could occur to the paintwork.
- Pulling on the release lever in direction of arrow ① ⇒ fig. 121 will unlock the bonnet.
- Grip with the hand under the radiator grille and lift up the bonnet.
- Take the bonnet support out of its holder and set it in the opening ② on the bonnet.

#### Closing the bonnet

- Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Press the bonnet support into the holder designed to hold it.
- Allow the bonnet to drop from a height of about 20 cm into the lock - bonnet **do not press down on it!**

#### ⚠ WARNING


- **Never open the bonnet if you see that steam or coolant is flowing out of the engine compartment - risk of scalding! Wait long enough until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.**
- **For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. One should therefore check that the lock has in fact engaged properly after closing the bonnet.**
- **Stop your vehicle immediately while driving if you notice that the lock is not properly engaged and close the bonnet properly - risk of an accident!**

#### ⚠ Caution

Never open the bonnet using the locking lever - danger of causing damage. ■

## Working in the engine compartment

*Particular care is required when carrying out any work in the engine compartment!*

There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area ⇒ .

### WARNING

- Never open the bonnet if you see that steam or coolant is flowing out of the engine compartment - risk of scalding! Wait long enough until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.
- Switch off the engine and pull out the ignition key.
- Apply the handbrake firmly.
- Move the gear lever into the Neutral position.
- Allow the engine to cool down.
- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never spill oil and other fluids over the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the anti-freeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the battery.
- Never place your hand into the radiator fan as long as the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Never open the cap of the coolant expansion bottle as long as the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- Cover over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir with a large cloth when opening it as protection for your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- Do not let objects, such as e.g. cleaning cloth or tools lie in the engine compartment.

### WARNING (continued)

- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the lifting jack\* is not sufficient for this - risk of injury!
- In cases where it be necessary to carry out inspection work when the engine is running there is an additional risk from rotating parts (e.g. the V-ribbed belt, alternator, radiator fan) and from the high-voltage ignition system. Please observe in addition the following:
  - Never touch the electrical cables of the ignition system.
  - Absolutely avoid any jewellery, loose items of clothing or long hair from getting into the rotating parts of the engine - Hazard! Therefore remove any jewellery beforehand, tie up your hair and wear tight fitting clothing.
- Please also comply with the warning instructions stated below when carrying out any essential work on the fuel system or on the electrical system:
  - Always separate the car battery from the electrical system.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never carry out any work close to naked flames.
  - Always keep a working fire extinguisher at hand.

### Caution

When replenishing fluids in the engine, always ensure that the fluids are on no account mixed up. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage! ■

## Overview of the engine compartment

The main inspection points.

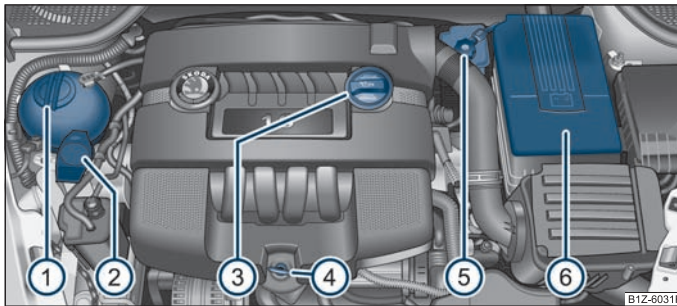


Fig. 122 1.6 ltr./75 kW petrol engine

①	Coolant expansion bottle .....	143
②	Windshield washer fluid reservoir .....	150
③	Engine oil filler opening .....	142
④	Engine oil dipstick .....	141
⑤	Brake fluid reservoir .....	145
⑥	Battery (below a cover) .....	146



### Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical. ■

## Engine oil

### Check engine oil level

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine.

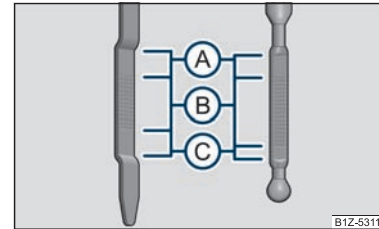


Fig. 123 Dipstick

### Checking the oil level

- Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface.
- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ ⚠ in “Working in the engine compartment” on page 140.
- Wait a few minutes and pull out the oil dipstick.
- Wipe off the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again fully.
- Then withdraw the dipstick again and read off the oil level.

### Oil level within range **A**

- You must **not** top up the oil.

### Oil level within range **B**


- You **may** top up the oil. It is possible that the oil level may then be within range **A** after doing this.


### Oil level within range **C**

- You **must** top up the oil ⇒ page 142. It is sufficient, once this is done, to keep the oil level within range **B**.


It is normal for the engine to consume oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. The oil consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5000 kilometres.

One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably every time after the fuel tank is filled or after driving for long stretches.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range  - **but not above this**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The warning light in the instrument cluster\* will indicate  $\Rightarrow$  page 25, "Engine oil pressure " whether the oil level is too low. In this case, check the oil level as soon as possible. Top up with an appropriate quantity of oil.

### Caution

- The oil level must on no account extend beyond the range . Danger of damaging the catalytic converter.
- **Do not continue your journey** if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with oil. **Switch the engine off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

### Note

Engine oil specifications  $\Rightarrow$  page 179, "Technical Data". ■

## Replenishing engine oil


- Inspecting the engine oil level  $\Rightarrow$  page 141.
- Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening.
- Pour in a suitable grade of oil in portions of 0.5 litres  $\Rightarrow$  page 180, "Engine oil specifications".
- Inspect the oil level  $\Rightarrow$  page 141.
- Carefully screw on the cap of the filler opening and push the dipstick in fully.

### WARNING

- **Avoid dripping oil onto hot parts of the engine when topping up will oil - a risk of fire!**
- **Read and observe the warning notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 140, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.**



### For the sake of the environment

The oil level must on no account extend beyond the range   $\Rightarrow$  page 141. Oil will otherwise be drawn in through the crankcase ventilation and may pass through the exhaust system to atmosphere. The oil may combust in the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

## Changing engine oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals stated in the Service schedule or according to the service interval indicator  $\Rightarrow$  page 17, "Service Interval Display".

### WARNING

- **Only carry out the engine oil change, if you have the required professional knowledge!**
- **Read and observe the warning notes  $\Rightarrow$  page 140, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.**
- **First of all, let the engine cool down, wear an eye protection and gloves - risk of caustic burns due to hot oil.**

### Caution

You must not pour any additives into the engine oil - risk of engine damage! Damage, which results from such product, are excluded from the warranty.



### For the sake of the environment

- You must on no account pour oil into the ground or into the sewage system. ►

- In view of the problems involved in properly disposing of old oil, the necessary special tools and the knowledge required for such work, we recommend that you have the oil and oil filter change carried out by an authorised Škoda Service Partner.

### Note

After your skin has come in contact with the oil, you must thoroughly wash your skin. ■

## Cooling system

### Coolant

*The job of the coolant is to cool the engine.*

The cooling system does not require any maintenance under normal operating conditions. The coolant consists of water with a concentration of coolant additive of 40 %. This mixture not only provides antifreeze protection down to  $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$  but also protects the cooling and heating system from corrosion. It also prevents the formation of scale and significantly increases the boiling point of the coolant.

You must therefore not reduce the concentration of antifreeze agent in the coolant by adding water, also not during the summer months or in countries with a warm climate.

**The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must be at least 40 %.**

You can increase the amount of antifreeze in the coolant if a higher concentration of antifreeze is necessary for climatic reasons but only up to 60 % (antifreeze protection down to approx.  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). The antifreeze protection tails off above that concentration.

Vehicles exported to countries with a cold climate (e.g. Sweden, Norway, Finland) are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about  $-35^{\circ}\text{C}$ . In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50 %.

### Coolant

The cooling system is factory-filled with coolant (purple in colour), which complies with the specification TL-VW 774 G.

We recommend that you use the same coolant additive - G12 PLUS-PLUS (purple in colour) for topping up the system.

Please contact an authorised Škoda Service Partner if you have any questions regarding the coolant or if you wish to fill up with a different coolant.

An authorised Škoda Service Partner can also supply you with the correct coolant additives.

### Coolant quantity

Petrol engines	Content
1.4 ltr./59 kW - EU4	7.1
1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4, EU2	7.4

Diesel engine	Content
2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR - EU4	8.4

### Caution

- **Other coolant additives may cause operational problems which, in particular, involves significantly reducing the anticorrosion effect.**
- **Any faults or problems resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and, as a consequence of this, result in major engine damage. ■**

### Inspecting the coolant level

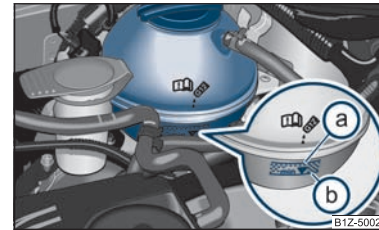


Fig. 124 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion bottle

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment on the right.

- Switch the engine off.



- Open the bonnet ⇒ page 139.
- Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle ⇒ page 143, fig. 124. The coolant level when the engine is cold must lie between the **(b)** (MIN) and **(a)** (MAX) markings. The level may also rise slightly above the **(a)** (MAX) marking when the engine is warm.

If the coolant level in the reservoir is too low, this is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 25, “Coolant temperature/coolant level  $\underline{\text{L}}$ ”. We nevertheless recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

### Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. You should not merely top up the coolant in the reservoir. It is also important to have the cooling system inspected without delay by a specialist garage.

Losses can only occur through the pressure relief in the cap of the coolant expansion bottle which is completely free of leaks if the coolant boils as a result of overheating and is forced out of the cooling system.



### WARNING

Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 140, “Working in the engine compartment” before working in the engine compartment.



### Caution

One should contact a specialist garage as soon as possible if the source of overheating itself cannot be determined and removed, since there may be grave damage to the engine. ■

## Replenishing the coolant

- Switch the engine off.
- Allow the engine to cool down.
- Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir ⇒ page 143, fig. 124 and unscrew the cap **carefully** by turning it to the left ⇒

- Top up the coolant.
- Screw the cap tight until it is heard to lock.

The coolant which you use for replenishing the system, must comply with one specific specification ⇒ page 143. Do not use an alternative additive if the coolant additive G13 is not available in an emergency. Just top up the system with water and as soon as possible arrange adjustment to correct the mixing ratio of water and coolant additive again by a specialist garage.

Only use fresh coolant for topping up the system.

Do not fill up over the “MAX” marking! Excess coolant which is heated up is forced out of the cooling system through the pressure relief valve in the cap of the coolant compensation bottle.

Wait until the engine has cooled down for a system which has suffered a major loss of coolant before pouring in coolant. This is necessary to avoid engine damage.



### WARNING

- **The cooling system is pressurized! Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion bottle if the engine is still hot – risk of scalding!**
- **The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health. Avoid contact with the coolant. Coolant vapours are also harmful to the health. It is important, therefore, to always safely store any coolant additive in its original container out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!**
- **If any splashes of coolant get into your eyes, rinse out your eyes immediately with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.**
- **You should also consult a doctor without delay if you have inadvertently swallowed coolant.**



### Caution

**Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with coolant. Switch the engine off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

## For the sake of the environment

Do not re-use coolant if it is necessary to drain the coolant in the system. It should be collected and disposed of in compliance with environmental protection regulations. ■

## Radiator fan

*The radiator fan may switch on suddenly.*

The radiator fan is driven by an electric motor and controlled according to the coolant temperature.

The radiator fan may continue running for up to 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off - even if the ignition is also off. It may also switch on suddenly after a certain time, if

- the coolant temperature has risen because of an accumulation of heat or
- the warm engine compartment is heated up additionally by strong sunlight.

### WARNING

**You must therefore be aware when working in the engine compartment that the fan may switch on suddenly - risk of injury! ■**

## Brake fluid

### Inspecting the brake fluid level

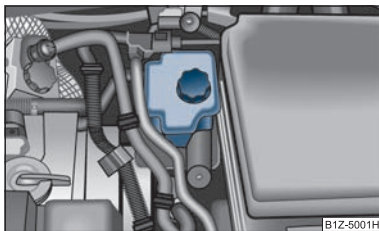



Fig. 125 Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

The brake fluid reservoir is located on the left of the engine compartment. The brake fluid reservoir on right-hand steering models is positioned on the other side of the engine compartment.

- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ page 139.
- Inspect the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ fig. 125. The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads, and is perfectly normal.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking. If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the warning light ⇒ page 28, "Brake system " lighting up in the instrument cluster. In this case **stop immediately and do not drive any further! Obtain professional assistance.**

### WARNING

- Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 140, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.
- If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further - risk of accident! Obtain professional assistance. ■

### Replacing brake fluid

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. This causes the fluid to absorb moisture from the surrounding air over a period of time. Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system. The water content also lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

One may only use new genuine brake fluid from Škoda Auto. The brake fluid must comply with one of the following standards or specifications:

- VW 50114
- FMVSS 116 DOT4
- DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4

We recommend that you have the brake fluid replaced by an **authorised Škoda Service Partner** as part of an Inspection Service.

### WARNING

**Using old brake fluid can result in severe stress on the brakes because of the formation of vapour bubbles in the brake system. This greatly impairs the braking efficiency and thus also the safety of your vehicle.**

### Caution

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

### For the sake of the environment

In view of the problems involved with proper disposal of brake fluid, the special tools and the professional knowledge required, you should have the brake fluid replaced by a Škoda Service Partner. ■

## Battery

### Working on the battery

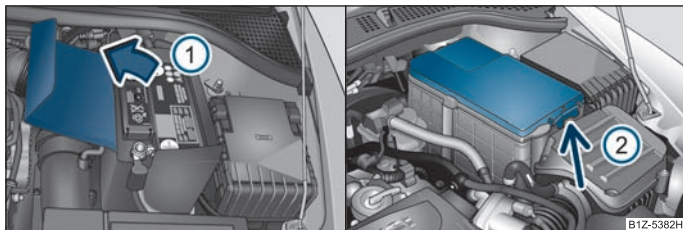





Fig. 126 Engine compartment: Polyester cover of the vehicle battery / plastic cover of the vehicle battery

The battery is located in the engine compartment under a polyester cover ⇒ fig. 126 - left, or it may be located under a plastic cover\* ⇒ fig. 126 - right.

- Open the battery cover in direction of arrow  ⇒ fig. 126 or press the elastic interlock  on the side of the battery cover, fold the cover up and remove it.
- The installation of the battery cover takes place in the reverse order.

The edge of the battery cover ⇒ fig. 126 - left is inserted between the battery and the side wall of the battery cover when working on the battery.

Removal and installation of the battery is not recommended since it can, under certain circumstances, lead to major damage. Contact a specialist garage.

There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and burns when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions ⇒  stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety.

### WARNING

- **The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care. Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling batteries. Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs. Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, skin cracks). Acids coming into contact with water are diluted accompanied by significant development of heat.**
- **Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect the eyes with safety glasses or a shield! There is the danger of suffering blindness! If any battery electrolyte gets into your eye, rinse out your eye immediately with clear water for several minutes. Contact a doctor without delay.**
- **Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. Contact a doctor immediately if you swallow battery electrolyte.**
- **Keep batteries out of the reach of children.**
- **Hydrogen is released when you charge a battery and a highly explosive gas mixture is produced. An explosion can be caused through sparking over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Bridging of the poles will create a short circuit (e.g. through metal objects, cables). Possible consequences of a short circuit: Melting of lead struts, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.**
- **It is prohibited to work with a naked flame and light, to smoke or to carry out any activities which produce sparks. Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong spark build-up represents a risk of injury.**
- **Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition as well as all electrical components and disconnect the negative cable (-) on the battery. If you wish to replace a bulb it is sufficient to switch off the appropriate light.**
- **Never charge a frozen or thawed battery - risk of explosion and caustic burns! Replace a frozen battery.**
- **Never jump-start the batteries which have a too low electrolyte level - risk of explosion and caustic burns!**
- **Never use a battery which is damaged - risk of explosion! Immediately replace a damaged battery.**

**⚠ Caution**

- You must only disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the electrical system (electronic components) of the vehicle may be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system of the vehicle, first disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery. Then disconnect the positive terminal (+).
- When reconnecting the battery, first connect the positive terminal (+) and only then the negative terminal (-) of the battery. You must on no account connect the cables wrongly - risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the vehicle body otherwise damage could occur to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.

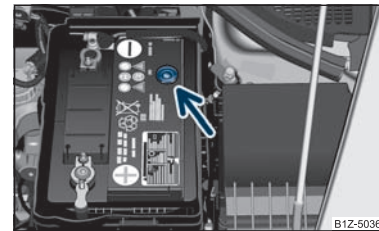
**♻ For the sake of the environment**

A removed battery is a special type of waste which is harmful to the environment - contact your specialist garage regarding disposing of the battery.

**ℹ Note**

Please also refer to the guidelines ⇒ page 149, also after connecting the battery. ■

**Battery with a two-tone indicator**



**Fig. 127 The battery: Show**

An indicator for the electrolyte level, the so-called magic eye ⇒ fig. 127, is located on the top of the battery. The indicator changes its colour in line with the electrolyte level in the battery.


Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Batteries, which are more than 5 years old, must be replaced. We recommend you have the battery checked or replaced by a specialist garage.

**⚠ Caution**

If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge because certain electrical components consume electricity (e.g. control units) also in ►

idle state. You can prevent the discharging of the battery by disconnecting the negative terminal or charging the battery constantly with a very low charging current. Please also refer to the notes when working on the battery ⇒  in "Working on the battery" on page 146.



### Note

- Batteries with two-tone indicator, which are mounted as of factory, are marked with a code which always begins with **5K0**. The actual marking can be e.g. **5K0 915 105 D**.
- Replacement batteries with two-tone indicator, which were obtained from Škoda original accessories, are marked with the code **000 915 105 Dx**, whereby "x" stands for a variable. The actual marking can be e.g. **000 915 105 DB**. ■

## Battery with a three-tone indicator

An indicator for the electrolyte level and the charge state, the so-called magic eye ⇒ page 147, fig. 127, is located on the top of the battery. The indicator changes its colour in line with the charge state of and the electrolyte level in the battery.


Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Green colour - the battery is adequately charged.
- Dark colour - the battery has to be charged
- Colourless or yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Batteries, which are more than 5 years old, must be replaced. We recommend you have the battery checked or replaced by a specialist garage.



### Caution

If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge because certain electrical components consume electricity (e.g. control units) also in idle state. You can prevent the discharging of the battery by disconnecting the negative terminal or charging the battery constantly with a very low charging current. Please also refer to the notes when working on the battery ⇒  in "Working on the battery" on page 146.



### Note

- Batteries with three-tone indicator, which are mounted as of factory, are marked with a code which always begins with **1J0**, **7N0** or **3B0**. The actual marking can be e.g. **1J0 915 105 AC**.
- Replacement batteries with three-tone indicator, which were obtained from Škoda original accessories, are marked with the code **000 915 105 Ax**, whereby "x" stands for a variable. The actual marking can be e.g. **000 915 105 AB**. ■

## Inspecting the electrolyte level

The battery is practically **maintenance-free** under normal operating conditions. We do, however, recommend that you have the electrolyte level inspected from time to time by a Škoda Service Partner when outside temperatures are high or when driving on long trips. You should also have the electrolyte level ⇒ page 149 checked each time the battery is charged.

The electrolyte level of the battery will also be checked as part of the Inspection Service. ■

## Operation in winter

The battery has to provide greater amounts of electricity during the winter. It also has only part of the initial power output at low temperatures that it has at normal temperatures.

**A discharged battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.**

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked by a Škoda Service Partner before the start of the winter and recharged if necessary.





### WARNING

**Never charge a frozen or thawed battery - risk of explosion and caustic burns.  
Replace a frozen battery. ■**

## Charging the battery


*A properly charged battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.*


- Read the warning notes ⇒  in “Working on the battery” on page 146 and ⇒ .
- Switch the ignition and all electrical components off.
- Only for “quick-charging”: Disconnect both battery cables (first of all “negative”, then “positive”).
- Carefully attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = “positive”, black = “negative”).
- You can now plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the charger.
- When charging is completed: switch the charger off and unplug the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then should you disconnect the terminal clamps of the charger.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all “positive”, then “negative”).

It is not normally necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the battery using low amperages (as for example from a **mini-charger**). Please also refer to the instructions from the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 of the total battery capacity (or lower) is that which should be used until full charging is achieved.

It is, however, necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, so-called “**quick-charging**”.

“Quick-charging” a battery is **dangerous** ⇒  in “Working on the battery” on page 146. It requires a special charger and appropriate knowledge. We therefore recommend that you have your battery quick-charged only by your Škoda Service Partner.

A discharged battery may already **freeze** at temperatures just below 0 °C ⇒ . We recommend that you no longer use a battery which has thawed out because the casing of the battery may be cracked through the formation of ice and this would allow battery electrolyte to flow out.

The vent plugs of the battery should not be opened for charging.

### **WARNING**

- **Never charge a frozen or thawed battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns. Replace a frozen battery.**
- **Never charge a battery which has a too low electrolyte level – risk of explosion and caustic burns. ■**

## Disconnecting and reconnecting the battery

On disconnecting and reconnecting the battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free.

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	⇒ page 41
Enter radio code number	see Radio Operating Instructions
Set hours	⇒ page 18
Data in the multi-functional indicator* are deleted.	⇒ page 18

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a Škoda Service Partner to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems. ■

## Replacing the battery

You should only replace a battery with a new battery of the same capacity, voltage (12 V), amperage and of the same size. Škoda Service Partners have a range of suitable batteries available.

We recommend that you only have an old battery disposed of by your Škoda Service Partner since it does require special disposal.

### **For the sake of the environment**

Batteries contain poisonous substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with local environmental protection regulations and on no account as domestic waste. ►

- In view of the problems involved with its proper disposal, we recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage. ■

## Windshield washer system

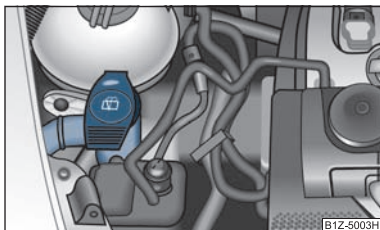


Fig. 128 Engine compartment: Windshield washer fluid reservoir

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlamp cleaning system\*. The reservoir is located at the front right of the engine compartment ⇒ fig. 128.

The **filling level** of the container is 3 litres, 5.5 litres on vehicles which also have a headlight washing system.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We therefore recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from Škoda genuine accessories (in winter additionally with antifreeze) which is capable of removing stubborn dirt. Follow the instructions for use on the packaging when using screen cleaning products.

You should always add antifreeze to the cleaning water in winter even if your vehicle is fitted with heated windscreen washer nozzles\*.

It is also possible in exceptional cases to use methylated spirits when no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. Please note, however, that the antifreeze protection at this concentration is only adequate down to -5 °C.

### **WARNING**

Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 140, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.

### **Caution**

- On no account should you add radiator antifreeze or other additives to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with headlight cleaning system, you should only add cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights to the windscreen washer fluid. Please contact your Škoda Service Partner, who will tell you which cleaning agent you can use. ■

# Wheels and Tyres

## Wheels

### General information

- New tyres do not offer optimal grip at first and should therefore be run in for about 500 km at a moderate speed and an appropriately cautious style of driving. You will also profit from longer tyre life.
- The tread depth of new tyres may differ because of design features and the configuration of the tread (depending on the type of tyre and the manufacturer).
- Drive over curbs on the side of the road and other such obstacles slowly and, where possible, at a right angle in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.
- Inspect your tyres from time to time for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges). Remove foreign bodies from the tyre profile.
- Damage to tyres and wheels is frequently not visible. Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. **Please reduce your speed immediately and stop if you suspect that a wheel is damaged.** Inspect the tyres for signs of damage (bulges, splits, etc.) If no visible damage is present, please drive at an appropriately slow speed and carefully to the nearest specialist garage in order to have your vehicle inspected.
- Also protect your tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Immediately replace any dust caps of the valves which have got lost.
- Mark wheels before removing them so that their previous direction of running can be maintained when mounted them again.
- Always store wheels or tyres which been removed in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

### Unidirectional tyres\*

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. This indicates the direction of rotation of the tyre, and it is essential that the tyres are fitted on to run in this direction. Only then are the tyres able to provide the optimal properties in terms of grip, low noise, wear-and-tear and aquaplaning.

Further information concerning the use of unidirectional tyres ⇒ page 155.

### ⚠ WARNING

- **New tyres during the first 500 km do not offer optimal grip and should therefore be run appropriately – risk of accident!**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!**

### 📄 Note

Please observe the various differing legal requirements regarding tyres. ■

### Tyre life

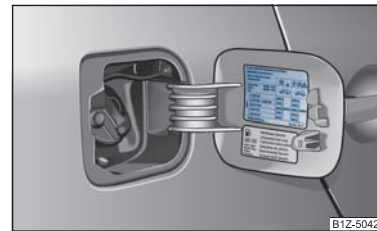


Fig. 129 An opened fuel filler flap with a tyre size and tyre inflation pressure table

### The life of your tyres very much depends on the following points:

#### Tyre pressure

The working life of tyres will be shortened considerably if the tyres are insufficiently or over-inflated and this will have an adverse effect on the handling of your vehicle.

Correctly inflated tyres are of particular importance when travelling at **high speeds**. It is therefore good to check the pressure at least once a month and also before setting off on a long trip. Please do not forget the spare wheel when checking the tyres.

The tyre inflation pressures for **summer tyres** are indicated on the inside of the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 129. The inflation pressures for **winter tyres** are 20 kPa (0.2 bar) higher than those for summer tyres ⇒ page 155. ▶



The tyre inflation pressures for tyres of the tyre size 205/50 R17, which are intended to be used with snow chains, is identical to the pressures for tyres of the tyre size 225/45 R17, see ⇒ page 151, fig. 129.

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

The tyre inflation pressure of the emergency spare wheel R 18 is 420 kPa (4.2 bar).

Always check the inflation pressure of tyres when cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres. Adapt the inflation pressure of the tyres accordingly if your vehicle is carrying a significantly higher payload.

### Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking (squealing tyres) increase wear-and-tear on your tyres.

### Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. There are a wide range of influences when driving which may result in an imbalance and which makes themselves felt through vibration in the steering.

You should have the wheels rebalanced since any imbalance increases wear-and-tear on the steering, the suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted and each time a tyre is repaired.

### Wheel alignment errors

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front and rear will not only increase wear-and-tear on the tyres but will also has an adverse effect on vehicle safety. Contact your specialist garage if you notice any unusual tyre wear.

#### **WARNING**

- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater flexing work. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and even a tyre blowout.
- Immediately replace the damaged rims or tyres.
- Tyres which are 6 years old or more should only be fitted in exceptional cases and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.



### For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption. ■

### Wear indicators

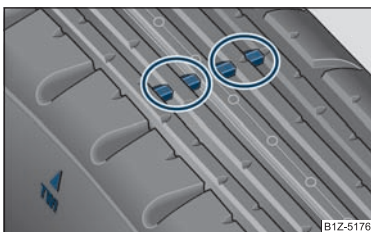


Fig. 130 Tyre tread with wear indicators

The base of the tread of the original tyres has wear indicators 1.6 mm high, installed at right angles to the direction of travel. These wear indicators are located at 6 - 8 points depending on the make and are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre ⇒ fig. 130. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

A remaining tread of just 1.6 mm, measured in the grooves of the tread next to the wear indicators, means that your tyres have reached their legally permissible minimum tread depth.

#### **WARNING**

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down. The legally permissible minimum tread depth should be observed.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle - "swimming" on a wet road surface). ■

## Changing wheels around

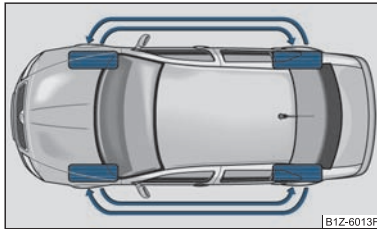


Fig. 131 Changing wheels around

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend changing the front wheels around with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram ⇒ fig. 131. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

It may be advantageous to swap the tyres over “crosswise” when certain types of wear characteristic arise on the running surface of the tyres (but not in the case of unidirectional tyres). The co-workers of the authorised Škoda Service Partners are extensively familiar with the combination possibilities.

We recommend that you change the wheels around every 10 000 km in order to achieve even wear on all wheels and to obtain optimal tyre life. ■

## New tyres and wheels

Tyres and wheel rims are important design elements. One should therefore use the tyres and wheel rims which have been released for use by Škoda Auto. They are exactly matched to the vehicle type and therefore contribute significantly to good road holding and safe driving characteristics ⇒ ⚠.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type on all 4 wheels, size (rolling circumference) and, if possible, the same tread pattern on one axle.

The authorised Škoda Service Partners have access to the most current information about which tyres we have released for use on your vehicle.

We recommend that you have any work relating to tyres or wheels carried out by an **authorised Škoda Service Partner**. The authorised Škoda Service Partners have all of the necessary special tools and replacement parts available plus the required specialist

knowledge and are also in a position to properly dispose of the old tyres. A large number of authorised Škoda Service Partners also have an attractive range of tyres and wheels available.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents. Approval and licensing may differ according to the legislation prevailing in individual countries.

Proper knowledge of the tyre data makes it easier for you to select the correct type of tyre. Tyres do, for example, have the following **inscription** on their walls:

**195/65 R 15 91 T**

What this means is:

195	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - <b>Radial</b>
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The following **speed restrictions** apply to tyres.

Speed symbol	Permissible maximum speed
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
U	200 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h
Y	300 km/h

The **date of manufacture** is also stated on the tyre wall (possibly only on the *inside* of wheel):

**DOT ... 20 09...**

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 20th week of the year 2009.

Any **spare wheel** which differs from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres) should only be used for a short time in the event of a puncture and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving. It should be replaced as quickly as possible by a normal wheel.



### WARNING

- **Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved for your model of Škoda Auto vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident! Approval and licensing of your vehicle on public roads may also become void as a result.**
- **You must on no account drive at a higher speed than is permissible for your tyres – risk of an accident resulting from tyre damage and loss of control over your vehicle.**
- **Tyres which are 6 years old or more should only be fitted in exceptional cases and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.**
- **Never fit tyres which have already been used without having adequate knowledge of their previous history. Tyres age even if they have not been used at all or only very little. A spare tyre must only be used in exceptional cases and only then when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.**
- **Do not, where possible, replace individual tyres but at least replace them on both wheels of a given axle at the same time. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.**



### For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of in conformity with the appropriate regulations.



### Note

It is not normally possible to fit wheels from other models of cars for technical reasons. This may also apply in certain circumstances to the wheels of the same type of vehicle. ■

## Wheel bolts

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels – e.g. light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres – you must therefore also use the matching wheel bolts of the correct length and shape of spherical cap. This is essential to ensure that the wheels are tightly fitted and that the brake system operates properly.

If you retrofit **wheel trims** (or have this done), please also ensure that an adequate flow of air remains assured for cooling the brake system.

The authorised Škoda Service Partners are instructed in the technical possibilities which exist regarding converting or retrofitting tyres, wheels and wheel trims.



### WARNING

- **In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!**
- **The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. However, they must never be treated with grease or oil.**
- **If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.**



### Caution

The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm. ■

## Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres. Summer tyres do not offer the same grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C because of their construction (width, rubber blend, tread pattern). This particularly applies to vehicles which are equipped with **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres** (code index H or V on wall of tyre).


Winter tyres must be mounted on all four wheels to obtain the best handling characteristics.

You must only fit those types of winter tyre which are approved for your vehicle. The permissible **sizes of winter tyres** are stated in your vehicle documents. Approvals may differ because of national legislation.

Please remember that the tyres should be inflated to 20 kPa (0.2 bar) more than is the case for summer tyres ⇒ page 151.

Winter tyres no longer offer the same winter performance once the **tyre tread** has worn down to a depth of about 4 mm.

**Ageing** also causes winter tyres to lose most of their winter performance properties - even in cases where the remaining tread depth is still clearly more than 4 mm.

**Speed restrictions** apply to winter tyres as well as to summer tyres ⇒ page 153, ⇒ .

You can fit winter tyres of a lower speed category to your vehicle provided that you also do not drive faster than the permissible maximum speed for such tyres, even if the possible maximum speed of your vehicle is higher. The corresponding tyre category can damage the tyres when exceeding the permissible maximum speed.

Please pay attention to the notes if you decide to fit winter tyres ⇒ page 151.

You can also fit so-called "all-year tyres" instead of winter tyres.

Please contact your specialist garage if there are any points which are not clear who will be able to provide you with information regarding the maximum speed for your tyres.

### WARNING

**You must on no account drive your car at more than the permissible maximum speed for your winter tyres - risk of an accident resulting from tyre damage and loss of control over your car.**



## For the sake of the environment

Fit your summer tyres on again in good time since summer tyres offer you better grip and handling on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as are temperatures below 7 °C - the braking distance is shorter, there is less tyre noise, tyre wear is reduced and fuel consumption is reduced.



### Note

Please observe the various differing legal requirements regarding tyres. ■

## Unidirectional tyres\*

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**. This indicates the direction of rotation of the tyre, and it is essential that the tyres are fitted on to run in this direction. Only then are the tyres able to provide the optimal properties in terms of grip, low noise, wear-and-tear and aquaplaning.

Should it be necessary to fit on a spare wheel in exceptional cases with a tyre not dedicated to the running direction or in opposite running direction, please adopt a cautious style of driving as the tyre is no longer able to provide optimal grip and handling in such a situation. This particularly important on wet roads. Please refer to the notes ⇒ page 160, "Spare wheel\*".

You should have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible and restore the correct direction of rotation on all tyres ■

## Snow chains

### Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations: ►

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
6J x 15 <sup>a)</sup>	47 mm	195/65
6.5J x 15 <sup>a)</sup>	50 mm	195/65
6J x 16 <sup>a)</sup>	50 mm	205/55
6J x 17 <sup>b)</sup>	45 mm	205/50

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 15 mm.

b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 9 mm.

Remove the **full wheel trims** if you wish to fit snow chains to the wheels.

Observe the national legal requirements relating to the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.



### WARNING

**Please pay attention to the information in the supplied fitting instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.**



### Caution

You must take the chains off as soon as you drive on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.



### Note

We recommend that you use snow chains from the Škoda genuine accessories. ■

## Accessories, changing and replacing parts

### Accessories and replacement parts

Škoda vehicles have been built according to the latest discoveries in safety engineering. Thus one should not change the condition in which the vehicle was delivered from the manufacturer without some thought.

The following guidelines should be observed when a vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories, have technical changes made to it or a part has to be replaced at some time in the future.

- Advise should always be obtained from an authorised Škoda Service Partner **before** buying any accessories and **before** making any technical changes ⇒ ⚠.
- This is particularly the case when accessories are bought in a foreign country.
- Škoda Genuine Accessories and Skoda original parts can be bought from authorised Škoda Service Partners who also professionally undertake the assembly of parts which were purchased there.
- All Škoda original accessories which are listed in the catalogue of original accessories such as spoilers, transport systems, child seats, etc., are homologized.
- Radios, aerials and other electrical accessories should only be installed by authorised Škoda Service Partners.
- The guidelines issued by Škoda Auto must be observed when making technical changes.
- This is to ensure that no technical damage occurs to the vehicle, that travelling and operating safety are maintained and that the changes are permissible. The authorised Škoda Service Partners undertake this work professionally or refer it to a specialist company in special cases.

**Any damage which is done caused by technical changes made without consulting a Skoda dealer is excluded from the guarantee.**

#### WARNING

- **We advise you, in your own interest, to only use Škoda Genuine Accessories and Škoda original parts which have been expressly approved for use on your**

#### WARNING (continued)

**Škoda. Reliability, safety and suitability have been established for these Škoda original parts.**

- **We cannot guarantee suitability of installation into your vehicle of other products despite keeping a constant eye on market developments (also not in the case where there is an attestation or permission can be produced).**
- **Škoda cannot meet its full warranty commitments if you use parts which are not genuine accessories, which can lead to sustained damage to the vehicle. ■**

### Technical changes

Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. This means that the operating safety of your vehicle can be considerably jeopardised, a greater wear of vehicle parts can occur and finally the vehicle registration documents expire.

We trust that you will understand that Škoda Auto cannot be liable for damage resulting from unprofessional work.

We therefore recommend that you have all work carried out using Škoda original parts at authorised Škoda Service Partners.

#### WARNING

**Work or modifications on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident! ■**

### Vehicles of category N1

A vehicle of category N1 is a vehicle which is designed and manufactured for the transportation of goods where the maximum weight must not exceed 3.5 tonnes. ■



## Breakdown assistance

### Breakdown assistance

#### First-aid box\* and Warning triangle\* (Octavia)

The first-aid box\* is attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the luggage compartment.

The warning triangle can be attached to the trim panel of the rear wall with rubber straps.

If you wish to equip your vehicle additionally with a warning triangle, please contact a specialist garage.



#### Note

Pay attention to the use-by-date of the contents of the first-aid box. ■

#### First-aid box\* and warning triangle\* (Estate car)

For vehicles of the type estate car the first-aid box and the warning triangle are housed in a compartment on the right side in the luggage compartment.

If you wish to equip your vehicle additionally with a warning triangle, please contact a specialist garage.



#### Note

Pay attention to the use-by-date of the contents of the first-aid box. ■

#### Fire extinguisher\*

The fire extinguisher is attached with straps in a holder under the driver seat.

**Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.**

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person or company annually (please observe the differing legal requirements).



#### WARNING

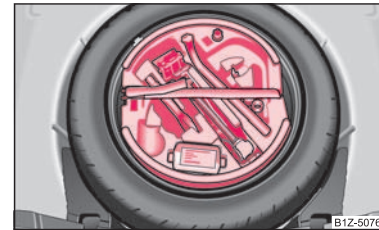
**If the fire extinguisher is not correctly attached, in case of sudden manoeuvres or an accident it can be “thrown” through the interior compartment and cause injuries.**



#### Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with the relevant and valid legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is no longer assured.
- The fire extinguisher is only supplied in certain countries within the scope of delivery. ■

### Vehicle tool kit



**Fig. 132 Luggage compartment: storage compartment for vehicle tool kit**

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack\*, on which a note sticker is affixed, are stored in a plastic box in the spare wheel\* ⇒ fig. 132 or spare wheel well. There is also space ▶



here for the removable ball head of the trailer towing device\*. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

The vehicle tool kit contains the following parts (depending on equipment fitted):

- Wire clamps for removing the full wheel trims,
- Plastic clip for a wheel bolt cover,
- Wheel wrench,
- Towing eye,
- Adapter for the wheel bolts lock.
- Tyre repair kit

Before placing the lifting jack\* back in its storage area, screw in the arm of the lifting jack fully.

### WARNING

- **The factory-supplied lifting jack\* is only intended for your model of vehicle. On no account attempt to lift a heavier vehicle or other loads – risk of injury!**
- **Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely attached in the luggage compartment.**



### Note

Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap. ■

## Spare wheel\*



Fig. 133 Luggage compartment: Spare wheel

The spare wheel lies in a well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and is fixed in place using special screws ⇒ fig. 133.

Before removing the spare wheel, you must take out the box with the vehicle tool kit box ⇒ page 159, fig. 132.

One should check the inflation pressure in the spare wheel (at best when generally checking the tyre air pressures – see sign on the fuel filler flap ⇒ page 151) to ensure that the spare wheel is always ready to use.

### Temporary spare wheel

A warning label displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel indicates that your vehicle is equipped with a temporary spare wheel.

Please observe the following notes when driving with a temporary spare wheel:

- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h with this spare wheel and pay particular attention while driving. Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The inflation pressure for this spare wheel is identical to the inflation pressure of the standard tyres. The temporary spare wheel R 18 must have an inflation pressure of 420 kPa (4.2 bar)!
- Use this spare wheel only to reach the nearest specialist garage as it is not intended for continuous use.
- No other summer or winter tyres must be mounted on the rim of the spare wheel R 18. ■

## Tyre repair kit\*

### General information

The tyre repair kit is intended for the repair of minor tyre defects.

The repair with the tyre repair kit is **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre, this repair only serves to reach the next specialist garage. The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately. **Please read the attached instructions carefully before the repair.** ▶

The tyre repair kit is located in a textile bag. There is a velcro fastener on the underside of the bag, with which the bag is attached to the floor covering of the luggage compartment in such a way that the side of the bag rests on the right side of the luggage compartment and on the seat backrest. ■

## Components of the tyre repair kit

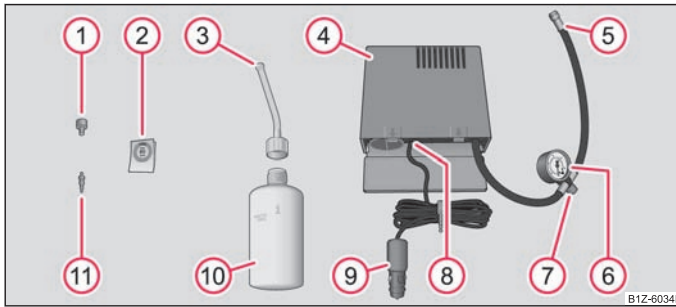


Fig. 134 Components of the tyre repair kit

The tyre repair kit is made up of the following parts:

- ① Screwdriver for removal and re-installation of valve core
- ② Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
- ③ Inflation hose with plug
- ④ Compressor
- ⑤ Air hose for the compressor
- ⑥ Tyre pressure checker
- ⑦ Air release valve
- ⑧ Stop button
- ⑨ Plug for 12V cigarette lighter socket
- ⑩ Bottle with sealant
- ⑪ Replacement valve core ■

## Preparing to use the tyre repair kit

Before using the tyre repair kit, carry out the following preparatory work:

- If it is necessary to change a wheel, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the traffic flow. The place you choose should be **level**.
- Have **all the occupants get out**. While changing a wheel, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (e.g. behind a crash barrier).
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Shift up into the **1st gear**.
- If a trailer is coupled, uncouple it.
- Remove the **tyre repair kit** from the luggage compartment.

### ⚠ WARNING

**If you find yourself in flowing traffic switch on the hazard warning lights system and place the warning triangle on the side of the road at the prescribed distance from your vehicle while observing all national legal provisions. In this way you are protecting not only yourself but also other road users. ■**

## Changing a wheel

### Preliminary work

The following steps should be carried out before actually changing the wheel.

- If it is necessary to change a wheel, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the traffic flow. The place you choose should be **level**.
- Have **all the occupants get out**. While changing a wheel, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (e.g. behind a crash barrier).
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Shift up into the **1st gear**.
- If a trailer is coupled, uncouple it. ▶

- Take the **vehicle tool kit** ⇒ page 159 and the **spare wheel\*** ⇒ page 160 out of the luggage compartment.

### WARNING

- If you find yourself in flowing traffic switch on the hazard warning lights system and place the warning triangle on the side of the road at the prescribed distance from your vehicle while observing all national legal provisions. In this way you are protecting not only yourself but also other road users.
- Never start the engine with the vehicle sitting on the raised jack – danger of suffering injury.

### Caution

If you have to change a wheel on a slope first block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object in order to secure the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.

### Note

Comply with the national legal regulations. ■

## Changing a wheel

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

- Take off the full wheel trim\* ⇒ page 163 or the caps ⇒ page 163.
- In the case of light alloy wheels remove the wheel trim cap ⇒ page 163.
- First of all slacken the safety wheel bolt\* and afterwards the other wheel bolts ⇒ page 164.
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel to be changed is clear of the ground ⇒ page 164.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper etc.).
- Take off the wheel.
- Fit on the spare wheel and tighten the wheel bolts slightly.
- Lower the car.

- Tighten the wheel bolts firmly, alternately and diagonally using the wheel wrench (crosswise) and last the safety wheel bolt\* ⇒ page 164.
- Mount the full wheel trim/wheel trim cap or the caps.

### Note

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- You must never grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting on unidirectional tyres, ensure that the tyres rotate in the correct direction ⇒ page 151. ■

## Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, you must perform the following steps.

- Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well.
- Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
- **Check the tyre pressure** on the spare wheel just mounted as soon as possible.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. Steel and light alloy wheels must be tightened to a tightening torque of **120 Nm**.
- Change the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about possibilities for getting repairs done.

### WARNING

**It is necessary to observe the guidelines given on ⇒ page 153 if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different to those it was fitted with at the works.**

### Note

- If you find, when changing the wheel, that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed to a workshop where the tightening torque can be checked. ■

## Full wheel trim\*

### Pulling off

- Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the full wheel trim.
- Push the wheel wrench\* through the clamp, support it at the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

### Installing

- First press the full wheel trim onto the wheel at the valve opening provided. Then press the full wheel trim into the wheel in such a way that its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

### ! Caution

- Use the pressure of your hand, do not knock on the full wheel trim! Heavy knocks mainly on the points where the full wheel trim has not been inserted into the wheel, can result in damage to the guide and centering elements of the full wheel trim.
- Check for yourself that a safety wheel bolt is located in the hole in the area of the valve before fitting the full wheel trim onto a steel wheel which is attached with a safety wheel bolt ⇒ page 165. ■

## Wheel bolts with caps\*



Fig. 135 Removing the cap.

### Pulling off

- Push the plastic clip sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the clip are positioned at the collar of the cap and detach the cap.

### Installing

- Push the caps fully onto the wheel bolts.

The caps are located in the well of the luggage compartment. ■

## Wheel trim caps\*



Fig. 136 Pulling off wheel trim cap on light alloy wheels

### Pulling off

- Carefully remove the wheel trim cap using the wire clamp ⇒ fig. 136. ■

## Slackening and tightening wheel bolts

Slacken the wheel bolts before jacking up the vehicle.



Fig. 137 Changing a wheel: Slackening wheel bolts

### Slackening wheel bolts

- Push the wheel wrench\* fully onto the wheel bolt <sup>7)</sup>.
- Grasp the end of the wrench\* and turn the bolt about **one** turn to the left ⇒ fig. 137.

### Tightening wheel bolts

- Push the wheel wrench\* fully onto the wheel bolt <sup>7)</sup>.
- Grasp the end of the wrench\* and turn the bolt to the right until it is tight.

#### **WARNING**

**Slacken the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been lifted with the lifting jack\* - risk of accident!**

#### **Note**

Apply pressure carefully with your **foot** to the end of the wrench\* if it proves difficult to slacken the bolts. Hold tight on the vehicle when doing this and ensure that you have a steady position. ■

<sup>7)</sup> Use the appropriate adapter for slackening and tightening the safety wheel bolts ⇒ page 165.

## Raise vehicle

You have to raise the vehicle with the lifting jack\* in order to be able to take off the wheel.

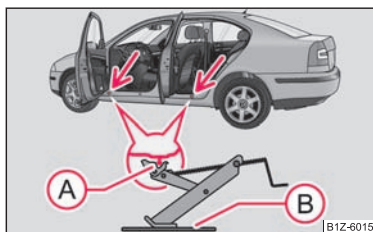


Fig. 138 Changing a wheel: Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

Position the lifting jack\* by selecting the jacking point which is closest to the wheel to be removed ⇒ fig. 138. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill. The engraving is only visible after opening the door.

- Position the lifting jack\* below the jacking point and move it up until its claw is positioned directly below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- Align the\* lifting jack\* so that its claw grasps the web of the lower sill (A) and the base plate (B) is resting flat on the floor.
- Turn the lifting jack\* up further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

**Ground which is soft and slippery** below the base plate of the lifting jack\* can cause the vehicle to slip off the lifting jack\*. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack\* on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, a tiled floor, etc.

#### **WARNING**

- **Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed - risk of injury!**
- **Take suitable measures to prevent the base of the lifting jack\* from slipping off - risk of injury!**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Not positioning the lifting jack\* at the specified points can result in damage to the vehicle. The jack can also slip off if it does not have sufficient grip – risk of injury!**
- **It is important to support the vehicle with suitable supporting blocks if you wish to work under the lifted vehicle – risk of injury! ■**

**Securing wheels against being stolen\***

You need a special adapter for slackening the safety wheel bolts.

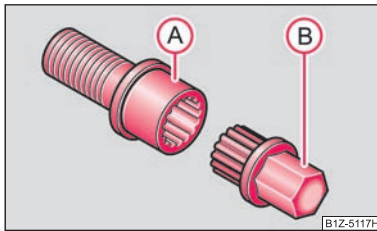


Fig. 139 Safety wheel bolt with adapter

- Pull off the full wheel trim/cap from the wheel hub or cap from the safety wheel bolt.
- Insert the adapter **B** with its toothed side fully into the inner tooting of the safety wheel bolt **A** right down in such a way that only the outer hexagon is jutting out ⇒ fig. 139.
- Insert the wheel wrench\* fully onto the adapter **B**.
- Slacken the wheel bolt, or tighten it firmly ⇒ page 164.
- Reinstall the full wheel trim/wheel cap after removing the adapter or place the cap onto the safety wheel bolt.
- Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. Steel and light alloy wheels must be tightened to a tightening torque of **120 Nm**.

The safety wheel bolts on vehicles fitted with them (one safety wheel bolt per wheel) can only be loosened or tightened up by using the adapter provided.

It is meaningful to note the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the safety wheel bolts. You can obtain a replacement adapter from an authorised Škoda Service Partner, if necessary, by quoting this number.

We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.

**⚠ Caution**

Damage can occur to the adapter and safety wheel bolt if the safety wheel bolt is tightened up too much.

**ℹ Note**

The set of safety wheel bolts can be obtained from an authorised Škoda Service Partner. ■

**Jump-starting****Initial steps**

You can use the battery of another vehicle for jump-starting yours if the engine does not start because the battery on your vehicle is flat. You will require jump-start cables for this purpose.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

**Jump-start cables**

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Please pay attention to the manufacturer's instructions.

**Positive cable** – colour coding in the majority of cases red.

**Negative cable** – colour coding in the majority of cases black. ▶

### ⚠ WARNING

- A discharged battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. In case of frozen battery carry out no jump-starting – risk of explosion!
- Please pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment ⇒ page 140, “Working in the engine compartment”.

### 📄 Note

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- Switch off any mobile phone, pay attention to the instructions for use of the mobile phone in such a situation.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist. ■

## Start engine

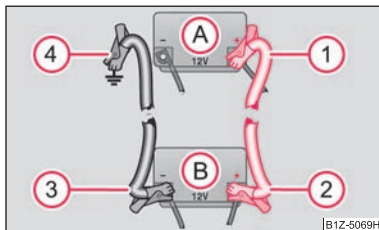


Fig. 140 Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle: A - flat vehicle battery, B - battery providing current

It is important to connect the jump-start cables in the correct order.

### Connecting positive terminals

- Attach one end ① to the positive terminal ⇒ fig. 140 of the discharged battery (A).
- Attach the other end ② to the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power (B).

### Connecting negative terminal and engine block

- Attach one end ③ to the negative terminal of the battery supplying the power (B).
- Attach the other end ④ to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block, or to the engine block itself.

### Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle providing current and run the engine at idling speed.
- Now start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting an engine after 10 seconds if it does not start right away and wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- Disconnect the cables on the engine in exactly the **reverse order** they were connected up.

### ⚠ WARNING

- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never make contact with each other. Furthermore, the cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of a short circuit!
- Do not affix the jump starting cables to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Run the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the batteries – risk of caustic burns!
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes etc.) away from the battery – risk of an explosion!
- Never jump-start the batteries which have a too low electrolyte level – risk of explosion and caustic burns! ■

## Tow-starting and towing vehicle

### General

Please pay attention to the following instructions if you are going to use a tow rope:

#### Driver of the towing vehicle

- Do not drive off until the tow rope is taught.
- Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off.

#### Driver of the towed vehicle

- Switch the ignition on so that the steering wheel is not blocked and you can also operate the turn signal lights, the headlight flasher, the windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system.
- Move the gearshift lever into Neutral.
- Note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. You will require significantly greater physical force to depress the brake pedal and to steer the vehicle if the engine is not running.
- Ensure that the tow rope is always kept taught.

#### Tow rope or tow bar

A tow **bar** is safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimizes any shocks. You can use a tow **rope** only if a suitable tow bar is not available.

The tow rope must be elastic to protect the vehicle. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.

Only attach the tow rope to the **towing eyes** provided for this purpose ⇒ page 167 and ⇒ page 168.

#### Driving style

Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

One should be constantly vigilant not to allow impermissibly high towing forces or jerky loadings. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the

points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.

#### ⚠ Caution

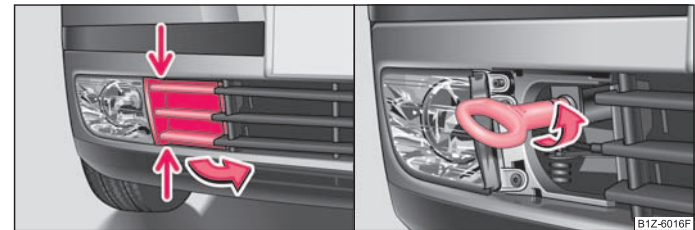
If the gearbox of your vehicle no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed in with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground, or on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.

#### ℹ Note

- Please comply with any national legal provisions particularly regarding the switched on signal systems, when towing in or tow-starting another vehicle.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle. ■

### Front towing eye

*The towing eye is stored in the box for the vehicle tool kit.*



**Fig. 141 Front bumper: protective grille/installing the towing eye**

Remove the protective grille carefully as follows:

- Press on grille with the hand (at the end removed from the licence plate) and release it in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 141 - left. ▶



- Screw in the towing eye by hand to the left up to the stop ⇒ page 167, fig. 141 - right. For tightening, we recommend that you use for example the wheel wrench\*, the towing eye of another vehicle or another, similar object which you can push through the eye.
- Put the protective grille in place after screwing out the towing eye again and press firmly into place. The protective grille must engage firmly. ■

The vehicle can be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised. The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**. ■

## Rear towing eye



**Fig. 142** Rear bumper: Removing the cover/installing the towing eye

- Take the cover out of the rear bumper ⇒ fig. 142 - left.
- Screw in the towing eye by hand to the left up to the stop ⇒ fig. 142 - right. For tightening, we recommend that you use for example the wheel wrench\*, the towing eye of another vehicle or another, similar object which you can push through the eye.
- Put the cover in place after screwing out the towing eye again and press into place. The cover must engage firmly.

### ! Caution

The towing eye must always be screwed in and tightened up to the stop. Otherwise there is the risk of it coming loose when towing the vehicle, e.g. when tow-starting. ■

## Towing the vehicle

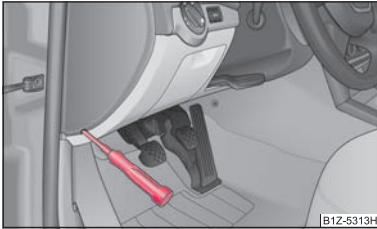
Please refer to the notes ⇒ page 167.

## Fuses and light bulbs

### Electric fuses

#### Replacing fuses

*Defect fuses must be replaced.*



**Fig. 143** Fuse cover: left side of the dash panel

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind the safety cover and under the cover in the engine compartment on the left.

- Switch the ignition off and also the electrical component affected.
- Use a screwdriver to take off the fuse cover on the side of the dash panel ⇒ fig. 143 or the fuse cover in the engine compartment ⇒ page 170.
- Find out which fuse belongs to the relevant component ⇒ page 171, “Fuse assignment in the dash panel” or ⇒ page 170, “Fuse assignment in engine compartment”.
- Take the plastic clip out of its fixture in the fuse cover, insert it onto the respective fuse and pull out this fuse.
- Defect fuses can be detected by their melted metal strips. Replace the defect fuse by a new fuse of the **same** ampere number.
- Fit on the fuse cover again.

We recommend that you always have the small box of replacement fuses in your vehicle. You can obtain replacement fuses from Škoda original accessories or from a specialist garage<sup>8)</sup>.

#### Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40
red	50

#### ⚠ Caution

- Never attempt to “repair” fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- Have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage if a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time. ■

<sup>8)</sup> The small box with replacement fuses is part of the basic equipping of the vehicle in some countries.

## Fuse cover in engine compartment

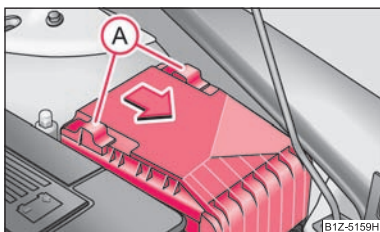




Fig. 144 Fuse cover in engine compartment

On some vehicles, the battery cover must be removed before removing the fuse cover ⇒ page 146.

### Removing fuse cover

- Move the circlips **A** ⇒ fig. 144 as far as the stop, the symbol  appears behind the circlip and remove the cover.

### Installing fuse cover

- Position the fuse cover on the fuse box and push the circlips **A** as far as the stop - the symbol  is visible behind the circlip.

### Caution

- When unlocking and locking the fuse cover, it must be pressed on the sides to the box, otherwise damage can occur to the locking mechanism.
- Carefully position the fuse cover in the engine compartment. If the cover was not correctly positioned, water can get into the fuses and this results in a damage to the vehicle! ■

## Fuse assignment in engine compartment

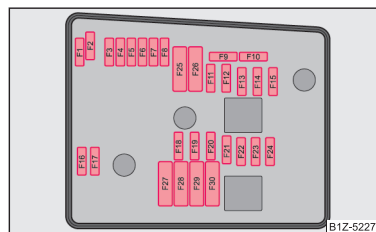


Fig. 145 Schematic representation of fuse carrier in engine compartment

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
F1	Not assigned	
F2	Control unit for automatic gearbox DQ 200	30
F3	Measuring circuit	5
F4	Valves for ABS	30/20
F5	Control unit for automatic gearbox	15
F6	Instrument cluster, windshield wiper lever and turn signal light lever	5
F7	Power supply for terminal 15 (ignition on), starter	40
F8	Radio	15
F9	Phone	5
F10	Engine control unit, Main relay	5/10
F11	Control unit for auxiliary heating	20
F12	Control unit for CAN databus	5
F13	Engine control unit	15/30
F14	Ignition	20

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
F15	Lambda probe	10
	glow plug system relay	5
F16	Central control unit, right main headlight, right rear light unit	30
F17	Horn	15
F18	Amplifier for digital sound processor	30
F19	Front window wiper	30
F20	Water pump	10
	valve for fuel dosing	20
	High-pressure pump	15
F21	Lambda probe	10/15
	Vacuum pump	20
F22	Clutch pedal switch, brake pedal switch	5
F23	Secondary air pump	5
	Air mass meter	10
	Fuel high pressure pump	15
F24	Activated charcoal filter, exhaust gas recirculation valve, radiator fan	10
F25	Pump for ABS	30/40
F26	Central control unit, left main headlight, left rear light unit	30
F27	Secondary air pump	40
	Glow plug system	50
F28	Not assigned	
F29	Power supply terminal 30 (continuous current supply from the battery)	50
F30	Terminal X <sup>a)</sup>	50

<sup>a)</sup> In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

## Fuse assignment in the dash panel

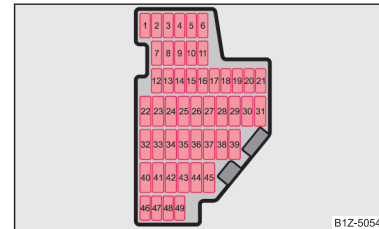


Fig. 146 Schematic representation of the fuse carrier in the dash panel

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
1	Diagnostic socket, Engine control unit, Electrical fuel pump	10
2	Control unit for ABS, ESP	5
3	Airbag	5
4	Heating, air conditioning, reversing lights, interior rear view mirror dimming, telephone preinstallation	5
5	Control unit for headlamp beam adjustment	5
6	Instrument cluster, Control unit for automatic gearbox, Control unit for electromechanical power steering, Parking aid; Haldex clutch	5
7	Not assigned	
8	Not assigned	
9	Not assigned	
10	Not assigned	
11	Not assigned	
12	Central locking control unit	10

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
13	Diagnostic socket, light switch, rain sensor	10
14	Control unit for automatic gearbox, Selector lever lock	5
15	Central control unit - interior lights	5
16	Heating, air conditioning, Climatronic	10
17	Park Assist	5
18	Not assigned	
19	Control unit for trailer detection	5
20	Not assigned	
21	Cornering lights for the left and right side	10
22	Air blower for Climatronic	40
23	Front power window	30
24	Cigarette lighter	25
25	Rear window heater Rear window heater, Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	25 30
26	Power socket in the luggage compartment	20
27	Fuel pump relay, Injection valves (diesel engine)	15
28	Not assigned	
29	Engine control unit, Crankcase ventilation heater	10
30	Control unit for automatic gearbox	20
31	Vacuum pump	20
32	Rear power window	30
33	Electric sliding/tilting roof	25
34	Control unit for convenience functions	20
35	Anti-theft alarm system	5
36	Headlight cleaning system	20

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
37	Front seat heating	30
38	Heated rear seats	30
39	Not assigned	
40	Air blower for heating and air conditioning	40
41	Rear window wiper	15
42	Not assigned	
43	Towing device	15
44	Towing device	20
45	Towing device	15
46	Controlling the seat heating, heated windscreen washer nozzles	5
47	Relay for auxiliary heating	5
48	Not assigned	
49	Light switch	5

## Bulbs

### Changing bulbs

The relevant lamp must always be switched off before a light bulb is replaced.

Defect light bulbs should only be replaced with light bulbs of the same type. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

Changing certain bulbs is not something which you can do yourself, but requires to be done by a specialist. Other parts of the vehicle must be removed in order to change the light bulbs. This applies, in particular, to bulbs which can only be reached from the engine compartment.

We therefore recommend that you have any bulbs changed by an authorised Škoda Service Partner or, in exceptional cases, by calling on other professional assistance. ►

Please note that the engine compartment is a hazardous area ⇒ page 140, "Working in the engine compartment".

We recommend that you always have a small box of replacement bulbs in your vehicle. You can obtain replacement bulbs from Škoda original accessories or from a specialist garage<sup>9)</sup>.

A stowage place for the bulbs is located in the box in the spare wheel.

### Bulb - Overview

Front headlight	Halogen headlight
Low beam light	H7
Main beam light	H1
Parking lights	W5W
Turn signals	PY21W
Fog lights*	H8

Light unit (Octavia)	Bulb
Reversing light	P21W
Turn signals	PY21W
Twin filament light bulb for the brake lights and tail lights	P21/4W
Twin filament light bulb for the rear fog lights and tail lights	P21/4W
Parking lights	W3W

Rear light unit (Combi)	Bulb
Reversing lights, brake lights, tail lights and rear fog light	P21W
Turn signals	PY21W
Parking lights	W3W

<sup>9)</sup> The small box with replacement bulbs is part of the basic equipping of the vehicle in some countries.

Others	Bulb
Side turn signal lights	LED
Licence plate light	C5W
3. Brake light	LED
Interior lighting	C10W
Reading lights	W5W
Luggage compartment light	W5W

### WARNING

- Bulbs H7 and H1 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury!
- It is recommended to wear gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.

### Caution

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, serviette or something similar.

### Note

This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is assumed that no major complications will arise. Other light bulbs should be replaced by your specialist garage. ■

## Removing the headlight

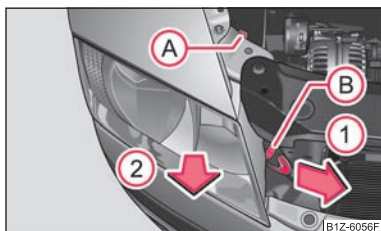


Fig. 147 Removing the headlight

The headlight must be removed in order to change the light bulb of the parking lights, low beam lights and main beam lights as well as the turn signal lights.

### Removing the headlight

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ page 139.
- Unscrew the plastic nut (A) ⇒ fig. 147.
- Pull the fuse (B) in upward direction.
- Pull the locking lever of the headlight as far as the stop in the direction of arrow (1).
- Unplug the plug connector and carefully take out the headlight in the direction of arrow (2).

Installation takes place in the reverse order.



### Note

After installing the headlight, the headlight setting must be checked by a specialist garage. ■

## Parking light at the front

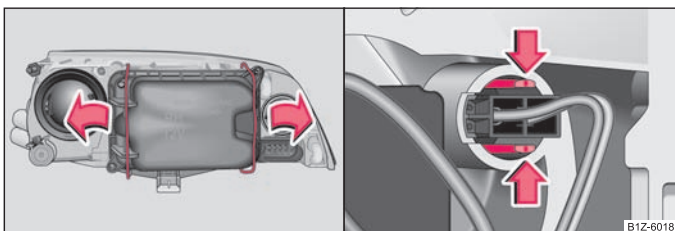


Fig. 148 Replacing the cover for the lamps of the parking- and low-beam light / removing the bulb for the parking light

### Change the light bulb for the parking light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Remove the headlight ⇒ page 174.
- Press the wire clamps in the direction of arrow to the side and remove the cover ⇒ fig. 148 - left.
- Press the contact studs in the direction of arrow and remove the holder with the light bulb of the parking light ⇒ fig. 148 - right.
- Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one.

Installation takes place in the reverse order.



### Note

After installing the headlight, the headlight setting must be checked by a specialist garage. ■

## Low beam light

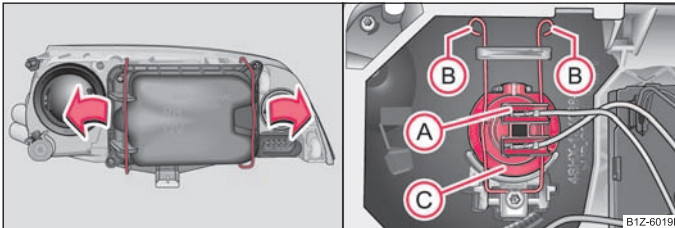


Fig. 149 Replacing the cover for the lamps of the parking- and low-beam light / removing the bulb for the low-beam light

### Removing the light bulb for the low beam light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Remove the headlight ⇒ page 174.
- Press the wire clamps in the direction of arrow to the side and remove the cover ⇒ fig. 149 - left.
- Unplug plug (A).
- Press the wire clamps (B) in the direction of the headlight and then unhook them to the side.
- Remove the light bulb (C) and insert the new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the light bulb socket fit into the recesses at the reflector.

Installation takes place in the reverse order.

#### Note

After installing the headlight, the headlight setting must be checked by a specialist garage. ■

## Main beam light

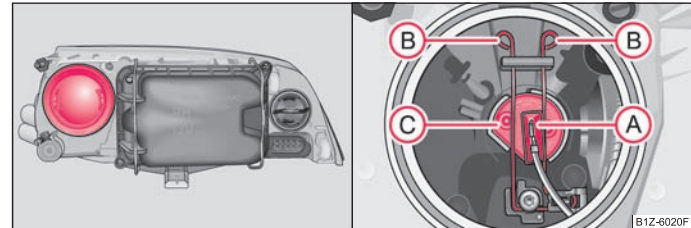


Fig. 150 Protective cover for the bulb for the main beam light / removing the bulb for the main beam light

### Removing the light bulb for the main beam light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Remove the headlight ⇒ page 174.
- Remove the protective cover from the rear par of the headlight ⇒ fig. 150 - left.
- Unplug plug (A).
- Press the wire clamps (B) in the direction of the headlight and then unhook them to the side.
- Remove the light bulb (C) and insert the new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the light bulb socket fit into the recesses at the reflector.

Installation takes place in the reverse order.

#### Note

After installing the headlight, the headlight setting must be checked by a specialist garage. ■



## Turn signal light at the front

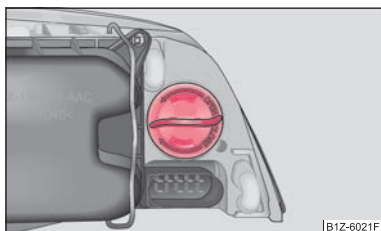


Fig. 151 Removing the light bulb for the turn signal light

### Changing light bulb for turn signal light (at the front)

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Remove the headlight ⇒ page 174.
- Turn the socket in the direction of arrow **OPEN** and take it out together with the light bulb for the turn signal light ⇒ fig. 151.
- Press the defective light bulb into the socket, turn to the left and remove.
- Press a new light bulb into the socket and turn the light bulb to the right as far as the stop.
- Insert the socket with the changed light bulb into the headlight and secure it by turning in the direction of arrow **CLOSE** to the right.



#### Note

After installing the headlight, the headlight setting must be checked by a specialist garage. ■

## Light unit (Octavia)

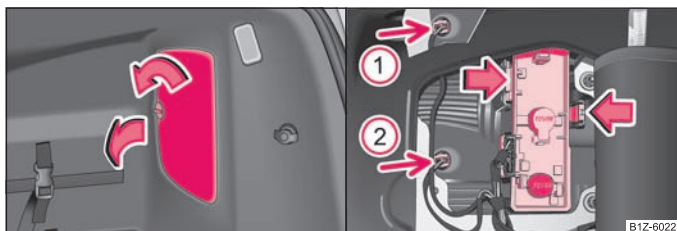


Fig. 152 Luggage compartment: Cover for the lamp holder / removing lamp holders

### Changing light bulbs in the lamp holder

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Unlock the locking button and open the cover of the lamp holder ⇒ fig. 152 - left.
- Press the catches in the direction of arrow and take out the lamp holder ⇒ fig. 152 - right.
- Press the defective light bulb into the socket, turn to the left and remove.
- Press a new light bulb into the socket and turn the light bulb to the right as far as the stop.
- Insert the lamp holder in such a way that the catches lock in place in the housing.
- Close and lock the cover of the lamp holder.

### Change the light bulb for the parking light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Unlock the locking button and open the cover of the lamp holder ⇒ fig. 152 - left.
- Take the defective light bulb (arrow ① or ②) out of the light housing and replace it with a new one of the same type.
- Close and lock the cover of the lamp holder. ■

## Rear light unit (Combi)

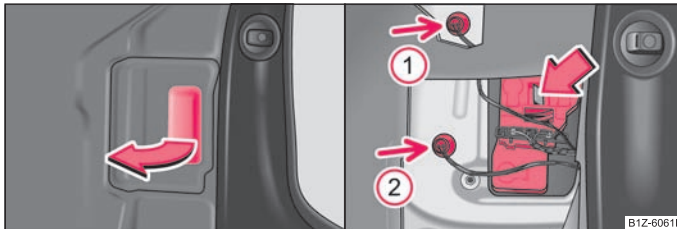


Fig. 153 Luggage compartment: Cover for the lamp holder / removing lamp holders

### Changing light bulbs in the lamp holder

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the lamp holder cover ⇒ fig. 153 - left.
- Take out the light bulbs from the parking light (arrow ① and ②).
- Press the catches in the direction of arrow and take out the lamp holder ⇒ fig. 153 - right.
- Press the defective light bulb into the socket, turn to the left and remove.
- Press a new light bulb into the socket and turn the light bulb to the right as far as the stop.
- Insert the lamp holder in such a way that the catches lock in place in the housing.
- Put the light bulbs from the parking light (arrow ① and ②) back in.
- Close the cover of the lamp holder.

### Change the light bulb for the parking light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the lamp holder cover ⇒ fig. 153 - left.
- Take the defective light bulb (arrow ① or ②) out of the light housing and replace it with a new one of the same type.
- Close the cover of the lamp holder. ■



## Technical Data

### Technical Data

#### General information

The details given in the official vehicle registration documents always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual. Please refer to the official vehicle registration documents or consult an authorised Skoda Service Partner concerning the engine with which your vehicle is equipped. ■

#### Used abbreviations

Abbreviation	Importance
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometre
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharger and injection system Common Rail

#### Performances

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system. ■

#### Weight

The loading capacity is reduced in line with the range of the special equipment. The unladen weight contains a fuel tank topped up to 90 %. A driver with a weight of 75 kg is also included in the value. ■

#### Identification details

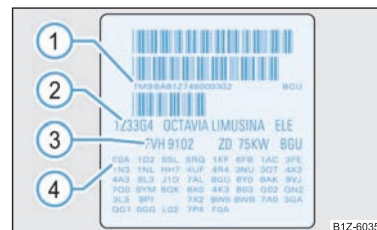


Fig. 154 Vehicle data sticker

#### Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇒ fig. 154 is located on the floor of the luggage compartment and is also stated in the Service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

- ① Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- ② Vehicle type
- ③ Gearbox code, paint number, interior equipment number, engine output, engine code
- ④ Partial description of the vehicle

### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (chassis number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand shock absorber dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen.

### Engine number

The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

### Type plate (production plate)

The type plate is located in the lower area of the left centre column.

### Sticker on inside of fuel filler flap

The stickers are affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap and contain the following information:

- The prescribed types of fuel,
- Tyre size,
- Tyre pressure. ■

## Fuel consumption based on ECE regulations and EC guidelines

Depending on the range of the special equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, the consumption values which in practice result when using the vehicle can deviate from the indicated values.

### Urban traffic

The consumption measurement in urban traffic begins with starting of the cold engine. Afterwards the normal urban traffic is simulated.

### Non-urban traffic

For the consumption measurement in non-urban traffic the vehicle, as in daily motoring, is accelerated and braked several times in all gears. The vehicle speed changes within the range from 0 to 120 km/h.

### Combined traffic

The consumption value in the combined traffic consists of 37 % from the value for the urban traffic and of 63 % from the value for the non-urban traffic. ■

## Dimensions

### Dimensions (mm)

	OCTAVIA	COMBI
Length	4572	4572
Width	1769	1769
Width including exterior mirror	2018	2018
Height	1462 1485 <sup>a)</sup>	1468 1490 <sup>a)</sup>
Clearance	140 164 <sup>a)</sup>	140 164 <sup>a)</sup>
Wheel base	2578	2578
Track gauge front/rear	1541/1514	1541/1514 ■

a) The value corresponds to the status with rough road package.

## Engine oil specifications

*The grade of engine oil should be selected in accordance with precise specifications.*

The engine of your vehicle has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil which you can use throughout the year - except in extreme climatic regions.

You can mix various oils together with each other when refilling with oil. This does not, however, apply for models with flexible service intervals (QG1).

Engine oils are, of course, undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication. ►

Authorised Škoda Service Partners are informed by Škoda Auto about current changes. This why you should always have engine oil changed by an authorised Škoda Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following must be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

#### Engine oil specifications for models with flexible service intervals (QG1)

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level <sup>a)</sup>
1.4 ltr./59 kW - EU5	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	3,2
1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4, EU2	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	4,5

<sup>a)</sup> Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level when filling; do not fill up too much. The oil level must be between the markings ⇒ page 141.

Diesel engine	Specification	Filling level <sup>a)</sup>
2.0 l/81 kW TDI CR EU4	VW 507 00	4,3

#### Engine oil specifications for vehicles with fixed service intervals (QG2)

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level <sup>a)</sup>
1.4 ltr./59 kW - EU5	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3,2
1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4, EU2	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	4,5

<sup>a)</sup> Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level when filling; do not fill up too much. The oil level must be between the markings ⇒ page 141.

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 can be used once for refilling. ACEA A3.

Diesel engine	Specification	Filling level <sup>a)</sup>
2.0 l/81 kW TDI CR EU4	VW 507 00	4,3

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 can be used once for refilling.

#### Caution

Only the previously-mentioned oils may be used on vehicles with flexible service intervals (QG1). We recommend always refilling with oil of the same specification since this will maintain the properties of the oil. In exceptional cases, you must top up only once engine oil complying with Specification VW 502 00 (only for petrol engines) or Specification VW 505 01 (only for diesel engines) to maximum 0.5 litres. You must not use other engine oils - risk of engine damage!

#### Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle. Consequently, you will always have the correct engine oil for refilling.
- We recommend using a preservative from the Škoda original accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.
- For further information - see Service schedule. ■

## 1.4 ltr./59 kW - EU5

## Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	59/5000
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	132/3800
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )		4/1390

## Performances

		OCTAVIA	COMBI
Maximum speed	km/h	174	172
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	14,3	14,4

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO<sub>2</sub> emission (in g/km)

	OCTAVIA	COMBI
Urban	8,5	8,5
Ex-urban	5,1	5,1
combined	6,4	6,4
CO <sub>2</sub> emissions combined	149	149

**Weight (in kg)**

	<b>OCTAVIA</b>	<b>COMBI</b>
Permissible gross weight	1740	1745
Unladen weight ready for operation	1245	1260
Loading capacity	570	560
Loading capacity when using the TLC	495	485
Max. permissible gross weight per front axle	860	860
Max. permissible gross weight per rear axle	910	920
Permissible trailer loads, trailer braked	900 <sup>a)</sup> 1100 <sup>b)</sup>	900 <sup>a)</sup> 1100 <sup>b)</sup>
Permissible trailer loads, trailer unbraked	600	600

a) Uphills up to 12 %

b) Uphills up to 8 %



## 1.6 ltr./75 kW - EU4, EU2

### Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	75/5600
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	148/3800
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )		4/1595

### Performances

		OCTAVIA	COMBI
Maximum speed	km/h	190	189
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	12,3	12,4

### Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO<sub>2</sub> emission (in g/km)

	OCTAVIA	COMBI
Urban	9,6/10,0 <sup>a)</sup>	9,7/10,0 <sup>a)</sup>
Ex-urban	5,5/5,8 <sup>a)</sup>	5,6/5,8 <sup>a)</sup>
combined	7,1/7,4 <sup>a)</sup>	7,2/7,4 <sup>a)</sup>
CO <sub>2</sub> emissions combined	166/176 <sup>a)</sup>	168/176 <sup>a)</sup>

a) EU4, EU2

**Weight (in kg)**

	OCTAVIA	COMBI
Permissible gross weight	1870	1885
Unladen weight ready for operation	1270	1285
Loading capacity	675	675
Loading capacity when using the TLC	600	600
Max. permissible gross weight per front axle	930/880 <sup>a)</sup>	920/880 <sup>a)</sup>
Max. permissible gross weight per rear axle	990/1100 <sup>a)</sup>	1010/1120 <sup>a)</sup>
Permissible trailer loads, trailer braked	1200 <sup>b)</sup> 1400 <sup>c)</sup> /1200 <sup>a)</sup>	1200 <sup>b)</sup> 1400 <sup>c)</sup> /1200 <sup>a)</sup>
Permissible trailer loads, trailer unbraked	600	600

<sup>a)</sup> Vehicles of the group N1.

<sup>b)</sup> Uphills up to 12 %

<sup>c)</sup> Uphills up to 8 %

## 2.0 I/81 kW TDI CR EU4

### Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	81/4200
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	250/1500-2500
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )		4/1968

### Performances

		OCTAVIA	COMBI
Maximum speed	km/h	195	194
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	11,0	11,1

### Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO<sub>2</sub> emission (in g/km)

Urban	6,5
Ex-urban	4,3
combined	5,0
CO <sub>2</sub> emissions combined	132

**Weight (in kg)**

	<b>OCTAVIA</b>	<b>COMBI</b>
Permissible gross weight	1960	1975
Unladen weight ready for operation	1360	1375
Loading capacity	675	675
Loading capacity when using the TLC	600	600
Max. permissible gross weight per front axle	1020/980 <sup>a)</sup>	1020/970 <sup>a)</sup>
Max. permissible gross weight per rear axle	980/1100 <sup>a)</sup>	1000/1110 <sup>a)</sup>
Permissible trailer loads, trailer braked	1400 <sup>b)</sup> 1600 <sup>c)</sup> /1400 <sup>a)</sup>	1400 <sup>b)</sup> 1600 <sup>c)</sup> /1400 <sup>a)</sup>
Permissible trailer loads, trailer unbraked	650	650

a) Vehicles of the group N1.

b) Uphills up to 12 %

c) Uphills up to 8 %



# Index

## A

Abroad .....	123
ABS .....	115
Warning light .....	27
Accessories .....	157
Active driver-steering recommendation .....	113
Adjusting seats .....	52, 86
Adjusting the steering wheel .....	77
Air conditioning system .....	
Air outlet vents .....	70
Climatic .....	73
Recirculated air mode .....	76
Airbag .....	94
Deployment .....	95
Front airbag .....	95
Head airbag .....	99
Side airbag .....	97
Warning light .....	24
Airbag system .....	94
Warning light .....	24
Alarm .....	37
Alternator .....	
Warning light .....	28
Antilock brake system .....	115
Antilock brake system (ABS) .....	
Warning light .....	27
Anti-theft alarm system .....	37
Ashtray .....	64
Auto Computer .....	18

Automatic vehicle wash systems .....	129
Automatic wiper/washer system .....	47
Avoiding damage to your vehicle .....	123

## B

Battery .....	28, 146
change .....	149
Charge .....	149
Inspecting the electrolyte level .....	148
Operation in winter .....	148
Before setting off .....	85
Belt .....	
Warning light .....	28
Belt tensioners .....	92
Belts .....	89
Bonnet .....	13, 139
Warning light .....	27
Boot lid .....	35
Lighting .....	46
Warning light .....	28
Brake .....	
Handbrake .....	80
Warning light .....	28
Brake Assist .....	115
Brake booster .....	114
Brake fluid .....	145
Brake pads .....	
Warning light .....	28
Brakes .....	113

Bulbs .....	
Warning light .....	24
Button for the central locking system .....	33
Buttons on the driver's door .....	
Power windows .....	39

## C

Catalytic converter .....	119
Central locking system .....	31
lock .....	33
unlock .....	33
Changing a wheel .....	161
Changing bulbs .....	172
Changing the engine oil .....	142
Changing wheels around .....	153
Charging the battery .....	149
Warning light .....	28
Check engine oil level .....	141
Child safety .....	103
Side airbag .....	105
Child safety lock .....	31
Child safety seat .....	
on the front passenger seat .....	104
Safety information .....	103
Child seat .....	105
Classification into groups .....	105
ISOFIX system .....	108
Use of child safety seats .....	106
Children and safety .....	103

- Chrome parts ..... 131
  - Cigarette lighter ..... 64
  - Cleaning ..... 129
  - Clock ..... 18
  - Clothes hooks ..... 69
  - Cockpit
    - General view ..... 9
  - Compartments ..... 65
  - Computer ..... 18
  - Convenience operation ..... 41
  - Converting/masking over headlights ..... 123
  - Coolant ..... 143
    - replenishing ..... 144
    - Warning light ..... 25
  - Coolant level
    - Warning light ..... 25
  - Coolant quantity
    - Warning light ..... 25
  - Coolant temperature/coolant level
    - Warning light ..... 25
  - Correct seated position ..... 86
  - Counter for distance driven ..... 16
  - Cruise control system ..... 82
    - Warning light ..... 24
  - Cup holder
    - front ..... 63
- D**
- Daylight driving lights ..... 42
  - Deactivating
    - an airbag ..... 101
  - Deactivating an airbag ..... 101
  - Defrosting rear window ..... 46
  - De-icing the windows ..... 131
  - Detachable towing device ..... 126
  - Diesel ..... 137
  - Diesel engines
    - Starting the engine ..... 79
  - Digital clock ..... 18
  - Direction indicators ..... 44
    - Warning light ..... 23
  - Distance driven ..... 16
  - Door
    - Child safety lock ..... 31
  - Driving economically ..... 119
- E**
- EDL ..... 112
  - Electric power-operated window
    - Operational faults ..... 41
  - Electrically adjustable exterior mirror ..... 50
  - Electronic Differential Lock ..... 112
  - Electronic immobiliser ..... 31
  - Electronic stability programme ..... 111
  - Electronic stability programme (ESP)
    - Warning light ..... 26
  - Emergency wheel ..... 160
  - Engine
    - starting ..... 78
    - switching off ..... 79
  - Engine compartment
    - Safety information ..... 140
  - Engine coolant temperature display ..... 16
  - Engine electronics
    - Warning light ..... 25
  - Engine oil ..... 141
    - Changing ..... 142
    - changing ..... 142
    - check ..... 141
    - replenishing ..... 142
    - Warning light ..... 25
  - Engine oil level
    - Warning light ..... 29
  - Engine revolutions counter ..... 15
  - Environment ..... 119
  - Environmental compatibility ..... 119, 122
  - ESP ..... 111
    - Warning light ..... 26
  - Exhaust gas
    - Warning light ..... 24
  - Exhaust gas inspection
    - Warning light ..... 24
  - Explanations ..... 6
  - Exterior mirror ..... 50
  - Exterior mirror heater ..... 50
- F**
- First-aid box ..... 159
  - Fixing net
    - Combi ..... 59
    - Octavia ..... 58
  - Fog lights ..... 43
    - Indicator light ..... 23
    - Warning light ..... 24
  - Front airbag ..... 95

- Front armrest ..... 67
- Fuel ..... 136
- Diesel fuel ..... 137
  - Fuel gauge ..... 16
  - Petrol ..... 136
- Fuel consumption ..... 119
- Saving energy ..... 119
- Fuel gauge ..... 16
- Fuel reserve
- Warning light ..... 29
- Full wheel trim ..... 163
- Fuses ..... 169
- ## G
- Gauges ..... 15
- Gearbox ..... 80
- General view
- Cockpit ..... 9
- Glow plug system ..... 79
- Warning light ..... 25
- ## H
- Handbrake ..... 80
- Hazard warning light system ..... 44
- Warning light ..... 23
- Head airbag ..... 99
- Head restraint ..... 53
- Headlight flasher ..... 45
- Headlights
- Fog lights ..... 43
- Heated windscreen washer nozzles ..... 47
- Heating ..... 71
- Defrosting windows ..... 72
  - Recirculated air mode ..... 73
- Horn ..... 9
- ## I
- Ignition ..... 77
- Ignition lock ..... 77
- Immobiliser ..... 31
- Instrument cluster ..... 15
- Interior light
- Luggage compartment ..... 46
- Interior lighting ..... 45
- Interior mirror ..... 50
- Interior monitor ..... 38
- Intermittent wiping ..... 47
- ISOFIX ..... 108
- ISOFIX system ..... 108
- ## J
- Jacking points ..... 164
- Jump-starting ..... 165, 166
- ## K
- Key ..... 30
- ## L
- Lashing eyes ..... 58
- Leather care ..... 134
- Lifting jack ..... 159, 164
- Lighting of the interior of the vehicle ..... 45
- Lights
- Changing bulbs ..... 172
  - converting/masking over ..... 123
  - Range adjustment ..... 43
  - switching on and off ..... 42
  - Warning lights ..... 22
- Lights and Visibility ..... 43
- Loading ..... 57
- Lock
- Central locking system ..... 33
- lock
- Central locking system ..... 33
- Locking ..... 31
- Remote control ..... 36
- Locking and unlocking from inside ..... 33
- Low beam ..... 42
- Warning light ..... 24
- Luggage ..... 35
- Luggage compartment ..... 35, 57
- Folding hooks ..... 59
  - Lashing eyes ..... 58
- Luggage rack ..... 62
- ## M
- Main beam ..... 42, 44
- Warning light ..... 23
- Manual shifting of gears ..... 80
- Memory for the on-board computer ..... 18
- Mobile phone ..... 84
- Motoring abroad ..... 123



Multi-functional indicator .....	18
<b>N</b>	
Net partition .....	61
Note holder .....	64
<b>O</b>	
Oil .....	141
Warning light .....	25
Oil dipstick .....	141
Onboard computer .....	18
Open door	
Warning light .....	28
Opening a single door .....	31
Opening for skis .....	69
Operation in winter	
Battery .....	148
Biodiesel .....	137
De-icing windows .....	131
Outside temperature .....	20
Overview of the engine compartment .....	141
<b>P</b>	
Paint .....	131
Paint damage .....	131
Parking .....	81
Parking aid	
rear .....	81
Parking light .....	45
Parking the vehicle .....	81

Passive Safety .....	85
Pedals .....	56
Petrol .....	136
Petrol engines	
Starting the engine .....	79
Polishing .....	131
Power steering .....	116
Warning light .....	24
Power window .....	39
Power windows	
Button in front passenger door and in rear doors	40
Buttons on the driver's door .....	39
Central locking system .....	41

**R**

Radiator fan .....	145
Rear armrest .....	55, 68
Rear fog light .....	43
Warning light .....	24
Rear window	
heater .....	46
Rear window heater .....	46
Rear-view mirror	
Exterior mirror .....	50
Interior mirror .....	50
Recharge battery .....	149
Recommended gear .....	18
Refuelling .....	137
Remote control .....	36
Synchronisation process .....	37
Replacing fuses .....	169
Replacing the wiper blades .....	49

Roof aerial .....	129
Running in the car .....	118

**S**

Safe securing .....	32
Safety .....	85
Safety information	
Engine compartment .....	140
Safety wheel bolts .....	165
Saving electrical energy .....	119
Seat belt height adjuster .....	91
Seat belt warning light .....	91
Seat belts .....	89, 92
Belt tensioners .....	92
Cleaning .....	135
fastening .....	91
Height adjustment .....	91
Safety information .....	90
taking off .....	92
Warning light .....	28
Seat heaters .....	56
Service Display .....	17
Service Interval Display .....	17
Setting temperature	
Heating .....	71
Setting the clock .....	18
Shifting .....	80
Side airbag .....	97
Side lights .....	42
Snow chains .....	155
Spare wheel .....	160
Speedometer .....	16

Stability system .....	111
Starting the engine .....	78
after fuel tank has run empty .....	79
Diesel engines .....	79
Petrol engines .....	79
Steering .....	
active driver-steering recommendation .....	113
Steering force assistance .....	116
Storage compartments .....	65
Storage facilities .....	65
Sun visors .....	47
Switching lights on and off .....	42
Switching off the engine .....	79
<b>T</b>	
Taking care of your vehicle .....	129
TCS .....	
Warning light .....	26
Temperature .....	
outside .....	20
the first 1 500 kilometres .....	118
The roof luggage rack system .....	62
Thickness of brake pads .....	
Warning light .....	28
Tool .....	159
Top Tether .....	109
Towing a trailer .....	125
Towing device .....	126
towing vehicle .....	167
Tow-starting .....	167
Traction control system .....	112

Traction control system (TCS) .....	
Warning light .....	26
Trailer .....	125
General Maintenance .....	125
Transporting children .....	103
Tread depth .....	152
Turn signal lights .....	44
Warning light .....	23
Two-way radio systems .....	84
Tyre .....	151
Tyre inflation pressure .....	
Warning light .....	27
Tyre repair kit .....	160
Tyres .....	
Winter tyres .....	155

## U

Underbody protection .....	133
Unlocking .....	31
Remote control .....	36

## V

Vehicle tool kit .....	159
Visors .....	47

## W

Warning lights .....	22
Warning symbols .....	22
Warning triangle .....	159

Washing .....	129
with a high-pressure cleaner .....	130
Washing the vehicle .....	129
Washing vehicle by hand .....	130
Wax treatment .....	130
Wheel .....	
Changing .....	161
Spare .....	160
Wheel bolts .....	154
Wheel trim .....	151, 163
Wheels .....	151
Window .....	39
Windows .....	
de-icing .....	131
Windscreen washer nozzles .....	47
Windshield washer fluid reservoir .....	150
Windshield washer system .....	150
Windshield wiper .....	47
Winter tyres .....	155
Wiper blades .....	
Replacing the wiper blades .....	49





Škoda Auto pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about scope of delivery, appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, fuel consumption, standards and functions of the vehicle is only correct at the time of publication. Certain items of equipment might only be installed later on (information given by the local authorised Škoda Service Partner) and only envisaged for particular markets. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction or translation, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of Škoda Auto.

Škoda Auto expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

We reserve the right to make changes to this document.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2010

SIMPLY CLEVER




ŠkodaService  
ŠkodaGenuine Parts  
ŠkodaGenuine Accessories

## **How you can contribute to a cleaner environment**

The fuel consumption of your Škoda - and thus the level of pollutants contained in the exhaust - is also determined by how you drive.

The noise level and wear and tear are also influenced by how you personally handle your vehicle. This Owner's Manual tells you how to drive your Škoda to achieve the minimum impact on the environment, and how to save money at the same time. Look up „Environment“ in the Index to find out more.

Please also refer to all the texts identified with a  in this Owner's Manual.

## **Make your contribution - for the sake of the environment.**

[www.skoda-auto.com](http://www.skoda-auto.com)

Návod k obsluze  
Octavia Tour anglicky 11.10  
S62.5610.01.20  
1Z0 012 003 MS